

**MARTIN LUTHER'S SMALL CATECHISM**  
**A HANDBOOK OF CHRISTIAN DOCTRINE**

FOR HE ESTABLISHED A TESTIMONY IN JACOB, AND APPOINTED  
A LAW IN ISRAEL, WHICH HE COMMANDED OUR FATHERS,  
THAT THEY SHOULD MAKE THEM KNOWN TO THEIR CHILDREN;  
THAT THE GENERATION TO COME MIGHT KNOW THEM,  
THE CHILDREN WHO WOULD BE BORN, THAT THEY MAY ARISE  
AND DECLARE THEM TO THEIR CHILDREN, THAT THEY MAY SET  
THEIR HOPE IN GOD, AND NOT FORGET THE WORKS OF GOD,  
BUT KEEP HIS COMMANDMENTS;

**PSALM 78:5-7**

**MARTIN LUTHER'S SMALL CATECHISM**  
**A HANDBOOK OF CHRISTIAN DOCTRINE**

BY MICHAEL A. SYDOW 1988, 2000, 2004

PUBLISHED BY THE CLC PUBLISHING DIVISION

ART DIRECTION & GRAPHICE DESIGN BY : MATT SCHASER

SCRIPTURES ARE FROM THE NEW KING JAMES VERSION.

COPYRIGHT 1979, 1980, 1982, 1984 THOMAS NELSON., PUBLISHERS

> > > > > >

JESUS ANSWERED AND SAID TO HIM,  
"IF ANYONE LOVES ME, HE WILL KEEP  
MY WORD; AND MY FATHER WILL LOVE  
HIM, AND WE WILL COME TO HIM AND  
MAKE OUR HOME WITH HIM.

**JOHN 14:23**



*This is your Catechism.*

*Be good to it.*

*Take notes in it.*

*The Bible passages quoted in this Catechism are from the New King James Version of the Bible.*

THIS BOOK BELONGS TO:



.....

ADDRESS:



.....

.....

PHONE:



.....

DATE STARTED:



.....

PASTOR/TEACHER:



.....

CHURCH:



.....

A PERSONAL BIBLE PASSAGE FOR INSPIRATION:



Introduction .....	3
--------------------	---

## **MARTIN LUTHER'S SMALL CATECHISM**

The Ten Commandments .....	5
The Apostles' Creed .....	7
The Sacrament of Holy Baptism .....	9
The Office of the Keys and Confession .....	10
The Sacrament of the Altar .....	11
The Lord's Prayer .....	12
Daily Prayers .....	15
Table of Duties .....	16
Christian Questions .....	18
The Life of Dr. Martin Luther .....	21

## **AN EXPLANATION OF MARTIN LUTHER'S SMALL CATECHISM**

The Bible .....	28
<b>The Ten Commandments</b> .....	41
The First Commandment .....	45
The Second Commandment .....	50
The Third Commandment .....	56
The Fourth Commandment .....	61
The Fifth Commandment .....	67
The Sixth Commandment .....	72
The Seventh Commandment .....	78
The Eighth Commandment .....	83
The Ninth Commandment .....	86
The Tenth Commandment .....	86
The Conclusion to the Commandments .....	90

## **The Apostles' Creed**

### **The First Article**

God the Father .....	97
Faith .....	100
Creation .....	102
Preservation .....	107
Protection .....	108
Our Thanks .....	109
The Loss of the Image of God .....	110

### **The Second Article**

The Person of Jesus .....	112
The Office of Christ .....	118
The Work of Christ .....	121
Christ's Humiliation .....	124
Christ's Exaltation .....	125
The Purpose of Redemption .....	131
Coming to Faith .....	133

### **The Third Article**

The Holy Spirit .....	135
The Work of the Holy Spirit .....	137
The Holy Christian Church .....	146
The Forgiveness of Sins (Justification) .....	156
The Resurrection to Eternal Life .....	159

### **The Sacraments**

The Sacrament of Holy Baptism .....	167
The Office of the Keys .....	178
Confession .....	183
The Sacrament of the Altar .....	187

### **The Lord's Prayer** .....

The Address .....	203
The First Petition .....	204
The Second Petition .....	207
The Third Petition .....	209
The Fourth Petition .....	214
The Fifth Petition .....	217
The Sixth Petition .....	219
The Seventh Petition .....	222

### **The Doxology** .....

### **Dictionary and Index** .....

### **Index of Passages** .....

*Grace be with all those who love our Lord Jesus Christ in sincerity.  
Ephesians 6:24*

## BE LOYAL TO THE FAITH

HOLD FAST THE PATTERN OF SOUND WORDS  
WHICH YOU HAVE HEARD FROM ME, IN FAITH  
AND LOVE WHICH ARE IN CHRIST JESUS.  
THAT GOOD THING WHICH WAS COMMITTED  
TO YOU, KEEP BY THE HOLY SPIRIT WHO  
DWELLS IN US.

**2 TIMOTHY 1:13 & 14**

You are about to begin a study of Christian teaching. The main textbook for any study of Christian teaching is the **BIBLE**. It tells us what God wants us to know – especially what He wants us to know about His Son Jesus, who died on the cross to save us from our sins.

This book is called a **CATECHISM**. It is a handbook which summarizes what the Bible teaches. The main purpose of this Catechism is to teach what the Bible says about our Savior and our life as believers in Him. It also provides a special outline to a study of things the Bible teaches. The Catechism does not replace the Bible but is helpful in teaching us what the Bible says.

## **THIS CATECHISM IS DIVIDED INTO TWO MAIN PARTS.**

The first part of this book is called Martin Luther's Small Catechism. Dr. Luther combined words from the Bible and his own words of explanation into a short summary of what the Bible teaches.

Luther divided his Catechism into **SIX CHIEF PARTS** and also added three other sections for the benefit of Bible students.

### **The Six Chief Parts**

1. The Ten Commandments
2. The Apostles' Creed
3. The Sacrament of Holy Baptism
4. The Office of the Keys and Confession
5. The Sacrament of the Altar
6. The Lord's Prayer

### **The other three sections of Luther's Small Catechism are:**

7. Daily Prayers
8. The Table of Duties
9. Christian Questions

The second part of this book is called an Explanation of Martin Luther's Small Catechism. Here there are more questions and answers on the Six Chief Parts. This added information tells more of what the Bible has to say on the subjects found in Luther's Small Catechism.

### **You will also find the following in this book:**

1. A brief history of the life of Dr. Martin Luther.
2. A section which tells what kind of book the Bible is and how we are to use it.
3. A **DICTIONARY** of some of the words used in the Bible and in this Catechism. You can use this section to look up the meaning of hard words. You can also find the meaning of a word used in a special way in the Bible or in the Catechism. With the dictionary is an **INDEX**, which will aid the student in finding Bible teachings presented in this Catechism.

MARTIN LUTHER'S SMALL CATECHISM  
A HANDBOOK OF CHRISTIAN DOCTRINE



Introduction	-----
The Ten Commandments	-----
The Apostles' Creed	-----
The Sacrament of Holy Baptism	-----
The Office of the Keys and Confession	-----
The Sacrament of the Altar	-----
The Lord's Prayer	-----
Daily Prayers	-----
Table of Duties	-----
Christian Questions	-----
The Life of Dr. Martin Luther	-----

## THE TEN COMMANDMENTS

---

AS THE HEAD OF THE FAMILY SHOULD TEACH THEM  
IN A SIMPLE WAY TO THOSE OF HIS HOUSEHOLD.

---

## TEN COMMANDMENTS

---



### **The First Commandment**

You shall have no other gods.

#### *What does this mean?*

We should fear, love, and trust in God above all things.



### **The Second Commandment**

You shall not take the name of the LORD your God in vain.

#### *What does this mean?*

We should fear and love God that we do not use His name to curse, swear, practice witchcraft, lie, or deceive; but we should call upon His name in every trouble, pray, praise, and give thanks.



### **The Third Commandment**

Remember the Sabbath day to keep it holy.

#### *What does this mean?*

We should fear and love God that we do not despise His Word and the preaching of it; but we should regard God's Word as holy and gladly hear and learn it.



### **The Fourth Commandment**

You shall honor your father and your mother that it may be well with you and you may live long on the earth.

#### *What does this mean?*

We should fear and love God that we do not despise nor anger our parents or superiors; but we should honor, serve, and obey them, and give them love and respect.



### **The Fifth Commandment**

You shall not murder.

#### *What does this mean?*

We should fear and love God that we do not hurt nor harm our neighbor's body; but we should help and be a friend to him in every bodily need.



### **The Sixth Commandment**

You shall not commit adultery.

#### *What does this mean?*

We should fear and love God that we live a pure and decent life in words and actions, and that husband and wife love and honor one another.



### **The Seventh Commandment**

You shall not steal.

#### *What does this mean?*

We should fear and love God that we do not take our neighbor's money or possessions, nor get them in a dishonest way; but we should help him to improve and protect his property and way of making a living.



### **The Eighth Commandment**

You shall not bear false witness against your neighbor.

#### *What does this mean?*

We should fear and love God that we do not tell lies about our neighbor, betray him, or say anything that might ruin his good name and reputation; but we should defend him, speak well of him, and explain all his words and actions in the best possible way.



### **The Ninth Commandment**

You shall not covet your neighbor's house.

#### *What does this mean?*

We should fear and love God that we do not sinfully desire to get our neighbor's inheritance or house by a trick or in a way that appears to be right; but we should do everything we can to help him keep what is his.



### **The Tenth Commandment**

You shall not covet your neighbor's wife, nor his workers, nor his animals, nor anything that is your neighbor's.

#### *What does this mean?*

We should fear and love God that we do not sinfully desire to use tricks or force, or do anything that might cause our neighbor to lose his wife, workers, or animals; but we should urge them to stay and do their duty.

## TEN COMMANDMENTS (CONTINUED)

---



### **The Conclusion**

#### *What does God say about all of these commandments?*

He says, "I, the LORD your God, am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers on the children to the third and fourth generations of those who hate Me, but showing mercy to thousands of those who love Me and keep My commandments."

#### *What does this mean?*

God threatens to punish all who do not obey these commandments. Therefore, we should fear His anger and not do anything against what He commands. God also promises grace and every blessing to those who obey these commandments. Therefore, we should love and trust Him and willingly do what He commands.



## THE FIRST ARTICLE (ABOUT CREATION)

---

I believe in God the Father almighty, maker of heaven and earth.

#### *What does this mean?*

I believe that God has created me and all creatures. He has given me my body and life, eyes, ears, and all my bodily members, my mind, and all my senses and still keeps them for me.

God also preserves me by richly and daily providing clothing and shoes, food and drink, house and home, spouse and children, land, animals, and all my property and all I need to support this body and life. He protects me from all danger. He guards and defends me from every evil.

God does all this because He is my good and gracious Father in heaven, not because of anything I have done to earn or deserve it. For all of this it is my duty to thank, praise, serve, and obey Him.

This is most certainly true.



## THE SECOND ARTICLE (ABOUT REDEMPTION)

---

I believe in Jesus Christ, His only Son, our Lord, who was conceived by the Holy Spirit, born of the virgin Mary, suffered under Pontius Pilate, was crucified, died and was buried. He descended into hell. The third day He rose again from the dead. He ascended into heaven and is seated at the right hand of God the Father almighty. From there He will come to judge the living and the dead.

### *What does this mean?*

I believe that Jesus Christ, true God, begotten of the Father from eternity, and also true man, born of the virgin Mary, is my Lord.

He has redeemed me, a lost and condemned person, purchased and won me from all sin, from death, and from the power of the devil, not with gold or silver, but with His holy, precious blood and His innocent suffering and death.

He did this that I should be His very own, live under Him in His kingdom, and serve Him in eternal righteousness, innocence, and joy; just as He is risen from death, lives and reigns in eternity.

This is most certainly true.



## THE THIRD ARTICLE (ABOUT SANCTIFICATION)

---

I believe in the Holy Spirit, the holy Christian Church, the communion of saints, the forgiveness of sins, the resurrection of the body, and the life everlasting. Amen.

### *What does this mean?*

I believe that I cannot by my own reason or strength believe in Jesus Christ, my Lord, or come to Him.

But the Holy Spirit has called me by the Gospel, enlightened me with His gifts, sanctified, and kept me in true faith.

In the same way He calls, gathers, enlightens, and sanctifies the whole Christian Church on earth and keeps it with Jesus Christ in the one true faith.

In this Christian Church He daily and richly forgives all sins to me and all believers.

On the Last Day He will raise me and all the dead and give to me and all believers in Christ eternal life.

This is most certainly true.



## I. What is Baptism?

Baptism is not just plain water. It is water used by God's command and connected with God's Word.

### *What is that Word of God?*

Christ our Lord says in the last chapter of Matthew, "Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit" (Matthew 28:19).



## 2. What are the benefits of Baptism?

Baptism works the forgiveness of sins, delivers from death and the devil, and gives eternal salvation to all who believe, as the words and promises of God declare.

### *What are these words and promises of God?*

Christ our Lord says in the last chapter of Mark, "He who believes and is baptized will be saved; but he who does not believe will be condemned" (Mark 16:16).



## 3. How can water do such great things?

The water doesn't actually do anything by itself. The power is in God's Word, which is in and with the water, and in faith which trusts this Word of God in the water.

Without the Word of God it is just plain water, and there is no baptism. But with the Word of God it really is a baptism; that is, a gracious water of life and washing of rebirth through the Holy Spirit.

### *Just as Saint Paul says in the third chapter of Titus:*

"According to His mercy He saved us, through the washing of regeneration and renewing of the Holy Spirit, whom He poured out on us abundantly through Jesus Christ our Savior, that having been justified by His grace we should become heirs according to the hope of eternal life. This is a faithful saying . . ." (Titus 3:5-8).



## 4. What is the meaning of this Baptism with water?

It means that the old Adam in us should be drowned by daily contrition and repentance and die with all sins and evil desires. It also means that a new man should daily appear and arise, who lives eternally before God in righteousness and purity.

### *Where is this written?*

Saint Paul says in the sixth chapter of Romans, "Therefore we were buried with Him through baptism into death, that just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life" (Romans 6:4).

## THE OFFICE OF THE KEYS AND CONFESSION

---

### A. The Office of the Keys

#### 1. What is the Office of the Keys?

The Office of the Keys is the special power Christ gave to His Church on earth to forgive the sins of penitent sinners and to retain the sins of the impenitent as long as they do not repent.

##### *Where is this written?*

The holy evangelist John writes in chapter 20: “[Jesus] breathed on [His disciples] and said to them, ‘Receive the Holy Spirit. If you forgive the sins of any, they are forgiven them; if you retain the sins of any, they are retained’” (John 20:22,23).

#### 2. How does a Christian congregation use the Keys?

A Christian congregation, with its pastor, uses the keys according to Christ’s command, either by forgiving those who repent of their sins and are willing to change, or by excluding those who are obviously impenitent from the Christian congregation. These actions are as valid and certain in heaven also as if Christ our dear Lord were dealing with us Himself.

### B. Confession

#### 1. What is Confession?

There are two parts to confession. One is that we confess our sins. The other is that we receive absolution, or forgiveness, from a fellow Christian as from God Himself, not doubting, but firmly believing that our sins are forgiven in this way before our heavenly Father.

#### 2. What sins should we confess?

Before God we should plead guilty of all sins, even those we don’t know we have done, as we do in the Lord’s Prayer. However, before one another we should confess only those sins which we know and feel in our hearts.





### 3. Which sins are these?

Examine your place in life according to the Ten Commandments.

Have you been faithful as a father, mother, son, daughter, employer or employee?

Have you been disobedient, unfaithful, or lazy?

Have you injured anyone by what you have said or done?

Have you stolen anything, neglected your duty, been careless, or damaged anything?



### 4. What will a fellow Christian say to someone who has confessed his or her sins?

He will say,

“According to the command of our Lord Jesus Christ I forgive you your sins in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit. Amen.”

---

## THE SACRAMENT OF THE ALTAR

---



### I. What is the Sacrament of the Altar?

It is the true body and blood of our Lord Jesus Christ, given to us Christians under the bread and wine to eat and to drink, as it was instituted by Christ Himself.

#### *Where is this written?*

The holy evangelists Matthew, Mark, Luke, and the apostle Paul write this way: “Our Lord Jesus Christ, the same night in which He was betrayed, took bread; and, when He had given thanks, He broke it and gave it to His disciples saying, ‘Take, eat. This is My body, which is given for you. Do this in remembrance of Me.’

“In the same way He took the cup, after supper, gave thanks, and gave it to them saying, ‘Drink of it, all of you. This cup is the new covenant in My blood, which is shed for you for the forgiveness of sins. Do this, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of Me.’”



### 2. What is the benefit of this eating and drinking?

The words, “Given and shed for you for the forgiveness of sins,” show us that God gives forgiveness of sins, life, and salvation through the Sacrament. For where there is forgiveness of sins, there is also life and salvation.



### 3. How can eating and drinking do such wonderful things?

Eating and drinking actually do nothing. It is the words, “Given and shed for you for the forgiveness of sins” which do this. These words, together with the bodily eating and drinking, are the main part of the Sacrament. Whoever believes these words has exactly what they say: forgiveness of sins.



### 4. When is an individual properly prepared to receive this Sacrament?

Customs in connection with eating and clothing are indeed a fine preparation. However, a person is truly worthy and well-prepared who has faith in these words, “Given and shed for you for the forgiveness of sins.” Whoever does not believe these words or doubts them is unworthy and unprepared. The words, “for you,” require nothing but believing hearts.

## THE LORD'S PRAYER

THE SMALL CATECHISM BY DR. MARTIN LUTHER

## THE LORD'S PRAYER (KING JAMES VERSION)

---



### The Address

“Our Father, who art in heaven.”

#### *What does this mean?*

With these words God tenderly encourages us to believe that He is our true Father and we are His true children, so that we may ask Him boldly and with complete confidence as dear children ask their dear father.



### The First Petition

“Hallowed be Thy name.”

#### *What does this mean?*

God's name is certainly holy all by itself, but we pray in this petition that we also keep it holy.

#### *How is God's name kept holy?*

God's name is kept holy when the Word of God is taught in its truth and purity, and we as children of God also live a holy life according to it. Help us do this, dear heavenly Father.

But whoever teaches and lives contrary to the Word of God dishonors God's name among us. Keep us from doing this, heavenly Father.



## The Second Petition

“Thy kingdom come.”

### *What does this mean?*

God’s kingdom certainly comes all by itself, even without our prayer, but we pray in this petition that it also come to us.

### *How does the kingdom of God come?*

God’s kingdom comes when our heavenly Father gives us His Holy Spirit, so that by His grace we believe His holy Word and live a godly life here in time and hereafter in eternity.



## The Third Petition

“Thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven.”

### *What does this mean?*

God’s good and gracious will is certainly done without our prayer, but we pray in this petition that it be done among us also.

### *How is God’s will done?*

God’s will is done when He breaks and stops every evil will and plan of those who do not want us to hallow His name or let His kingdom come, such as the will of the devil, of the world, and of our own flesh. His will is also done when He gives us strength and keeps us firm in His Word and in faith for as long as we live. This is God’s good and gracious will.



## The Fourth Petition

“Give us this day our daily bread.”

### *What does this mean?*

God gives daily bread without our asking, even to unbelievers, but we pray in this petition that He would teach us to realize this and to receive our daily bread with thanksgiving.

### *What is meant by daily bread?*

“Daily bread” means everything we need for our bodily well-being. It includes food, drink, clothes, shoes, house, home, land, animals, money and goods, a godly husband or wife, godly children, godly workers, godly and faithful leaders, good government, good weather, peace, health, education, honor, faithful friends, trustworthy neighbors – and things like that.



## The Fifth Petition

“And forgive us our trespasses as we forgive those who trespass against us.”

### *What does this mean?*

We pray in this petition that our Father in heaven would not look on our sins or deny our prayer because of them. We are not worthy of things for which we are asking, neither have we deserved them. However, we ask that our Father would by His grace give us what we ask; even though we sin often every day and indeed deserve nothing but punishment. We, too, will from our hearts gladly forgive and do good to all those who sin against us.

## THE LORD'S PRAYER (CONTINUED)

---



### **The Sixth Petition**

“And lead us not into temptation.”

#### *What does this mean?*

God indeed tempts no one; but we pray in this petition that He would guard and keep us so that the devil, the world, and our flesh do not deceive us or lead us into misbelief, hopelessness, or any other shameful or sinful acts; and, although we are tempted by them, we ask that we win in the end and keep the victory.



### **The Seventh Petition**

“But deliver us from evil.”

#### *What does this mean?*

We pray in this petition that our Father in heaven would deliver us from every evil to body and soul, property and reputation, and finally, when our last hour comes, give us a joyful end and graciously take us from this valley of sorrows to Himself in heaven.



### **The Doxology**

“For thine is the kingdom and the power and the glory forever and ever. Amen.”

#### *What does “Amen” mean?*



“Amen” means that I should be certain that these petitions are really heard by the Father in heaven; for He Himself has instructed us to pray in this way and promised that He will hear us. “Amen! amen!” that is, “Yes, indeed, it shall be so!”



### **THE LORD'S PRAYER**

#### *(New King James Version)*

“Our Father in heaven. Hallowed be Your name. Your kingdom come. Your will be done on earth as it is in heaven. Give us this day our daily bread. And forgive us our trespasses as we forgive those who trespass against us. And do not lead us into temptation. But deliver us from the evil one. For Yours is the kingdom and the power and the glory forever. Amen.”



## DAILY PRAYERS

How the head of the family should teach his household to pray in the morning and evening, to ask a blessing and say grace at the table.



### The Morning Prayer

In the name of God the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. Amen.

I thank You, my heavenly Father, through Jesus Christ, Your dear Son, that You have kept all harm and danger away from me last night; and I pray that You would also protect me today from sin and every evil, that my life and all my behavior may please You. Into Your hands I entrust my body and soul and everything else. Let Your holy angel be with me, that the devil may have no power over me. Amen.



### The Evening Prayer

In the name of God the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. Amen.

I thank You, my heavenly Father, through Jesus Christ, Your dear Son, that You have graciously kept me today, and I pray that You would forgive me all my sins, wherever I have done wrong, and graciously protect me tonight. Into Your hands I entrust my body and soul and everything else. Let Your holy angel be with me, that the devil may have no power over me. Amen.



### To Ask a Blessing

The eyes of all look expectantly to You, O Lord, and You give them their food in due season. You open Your hand and satisfy the desire of every living thing.

Psalm 145:15

Lord God, heavenly Father, bless us and these Your gifts, which we receive from Your bountiful goodness through Jesus Christ, our Lord. Amen.



### To Say Grace

Oh, give thanks to the LORD, for He is good. For His mercy endures forever. Amen.  
Psalm 106:1

We thank you, Lord God, heavenly Father, through Jesus Christ, our Lord, for all Your kindness, who lives and reigns eternally. Amen.

### Your Own Personal Prayer

## **I. Pastors**

A pastor must be blameless, the husband of one wife, temperate, sober-minded, of good behavior, hospitable, able to teach; not given to wine, not violent, not greedy for money, but gentle, not quarrelsome, not covetous; one who rules his own house well, having his children in submission with all reverence; not a novice; holding fast the faithful word as he has been taught, that he may be able by sound doctrine, both to exhort and convict those who contradict. 1 Timothy 3:2ff; Titus 1:9

## **2. What the hearers owe their pastors**

Even so the Lord has commanded that those who preach the gospel should live from the gospel. 1 Corinthians 9:14

Let him who is taught the word share in all good things with him who teaches. Galatians 6:6

Let the elders who rule well be counted worthy of double honor, especially those who labor in the word and doctrine. For the Scripture says, "You shall not muzzle an ox while it treads out the grain," and, "The laborer is worthy of his wages." 1 Timothy 5:17,18

Obey those who rule over you, and be submissive, for they watch out for your souls, as those who must give account. Let them do so with joy and not with grief, for that would be unprofitable for you. Hebrews 13:17

## **3. Civil Government**

Let every soul be subject to the governing authorities. For there is no authority except from God, and the authorities that exist are appointed by God. Therefore whoever resists the authority resists the ordinance of God, and those who resist will bring judgment on themselves . . . He does not bear the sword in vain; for he is God's minister, an avenger to execute wrath on him who practices evil. Romans 13:1-4

## **4. Husbands**

Likewise you husbands, dwell with [your wives] with understanding, giving honor to the wife, as to the weaker vessel, and as being heirs together of the grace of life, that your prayers may not be hindered. 1 Peter 3:7

Husbands, love your wives and do not be bitter toward them. Colossians 3:19

## **5. Wives**

Wives, submit to your own husbands, as to the Lord, as Sarah obeyed Abraham, calling him lord, whose daughters you are if you do good and are not afraid with any terror. Ephesians 5:22; 1 Peter 3:6

## **6. Parents**

And you, fathers, do not provoke your children to wrath, but bring them up in the training and admonition of the Lord. Ephesians 6:4

## **7. Children**

Children, obey your parents in the Lord, for this is right. "Honor your father and mother," which is the first commandment with promise: "that it may be well with you and you may live long on the earth." Ephesians 6:1-3

## **8. Employees**

Be obedient to those who are your masters according to the flesh, with fear and trembling, in sincerity of heart, as to Christ; not with eyeservice, as men-pleasers, but as servants of Christ, doing the will of God from the heart, with good will doing service, as to the Lord, and not to men, knowing that whatever good anyone does, he will receive the same from the Lord . . . Ephesians 6:5-8; Colossians 3:22

## **9. Employers**

And you, masters, do the same things to them, giving up threatening, knowing that your own Master also is in heaven, and there is no partiality with Him. Ephesians 6:9

## **10. Young People**

Likewise, you younger people, submit yourselves to your elders. Yes, all of you be submissive to one another, and be clothed with humility, for "God resists the proud, but gives grace to the humble." Therefore humble yourselves under the mighty hand of God, that He may exalt you in due time. 1 Peter 5:5,6

## **11. Widows**

Now she who is really a widow, and left alone, trusts in God and continues in supplications and prayers night and day. But she who lives in pleasure is dead while she lives. 1 Timothy 5:5,6

## **12. For Everybody**

All of the commandments are summed up in this saying: "You shall love your neighbor as yourself." Romans 13:9  
And continue in prayer for all men.

*Let each his lesson learn with care. And all the household well shall fare.*

*For those who are about to partake of the Lord's Supper:*

**1. Do you believe that you are a sinner?**

Yes, I believe that I am a sinner.

**2. How do you know this?**

I know this from the Ten Commandments, which I have not kept.

**3. Are you sorry for your sins?**

Yes, I am sorry that I have sinned against God.

**4. What have you deserved to receive from God because of your sins?**

I have deserved His anger and displeasure, temporal death, and eternal damnation.

**5. Do you also hope to be saved?**

Yes, this is my hope.

**6. Whom do you then trust?**

I trust in my dear Lord, Jesus Christ.

**7. Who is Christ?**

Christ is God's Son, true God and man.

**8. How many gods are there?**

There is only one God, but three Persons: Father, Son, and Holy Spirit.

**9. What has Christ done for you that you trust in Him?**

He shed His blood for me and died for me on the cross for the forgiveness of my sins

**10. Did the Father also die for you?**

No, the Father is God only, as is the Holy Spirit; but the Son is true God and true man; He shed His blood and died for me.



### **11. How do you know this?**

I know this from the holy Gospel and from the words of the Sacrament and by His body and blood which are given me as a pledge in the Sacrament.

### **12. What are those words?**

Our Lord Jesus Christ, the same night in which He was betrayed, took bread; and, when He had given thanks, He broke it and gave it to His disciples, saying, "Take, eat. This is My body, which is given for you. Do this in remembrance of Me."

In the same way He took the cup, after supper, gave thanks and gave it to them, saying, "Drink of it, all of you. This cup is the new covenant in My blood, which is shed for you for the forgiveness of sins. Do this, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of Me."

### **13. Do you believe, then, that the true body and blood of Christ are in the Sacrament?**

Yes, I believe this.

### **14. What leads you to believe this?**

I am moved to believe this from the word of Christ:

"Take, eat, this is My body . . . drink of it, all of you, this is My blood."

### **15. What should we do when we eat His body and drink His blood and in this way receive His pledge?**

We should proclaim and remember the shedding of His blood and His death, just as He taught us, "Do this, whenever you drink it, in remembrance of Me."

### **16. Why should we proclaim and remember His death?**

We should do this so that we learn:

- (1) to believe that no creature could possibly do enough to pay for our sins – only Christ, true God and true man, could –
- (2) to be frightened by our sins and consider them to be great indeed; and
- (3) to find joy and comfort in Him, knowing that we are saved through this same faith.

### **17. What caused Jesus to die and do what was needed to pay for our sins?**

Jesus did all this because of His great love for the Father and each one of us, as the Scriptures teach: John 15:13; Romans 5:8; Galatians 2:20.

### **18. Finally, why do you want to go to the Sacrament?**

From this I learn to believe that Christ died for my sin out of His great love for me. I also learn from Him to love God and my neighbor.

### **19. What should warn and move a Christian to receive the Sacrament frequently?**

As far as God is concerned, a Christian should be moved by the command and promise of Christ, the Lord. As far as he himself is concerned, he should be moved by the trouble that lies heavily upon him – the very reason the command, encouragement, and promise were given.

### **20. But what should a person do when he or she feels no need and has no hunger and thirst for the Sacrament?**

No better advice can be given to such a person than for him to put his hand on his body and feel whether he still has flesh and blood and believe what the Scriptures say about this: Galatians 5:17, 19-21; Romans 7:18.

Next, he should look around to see whether he is still in the world and remember that there will be no lack of sin and trouble, as the Scriptures say: John 15, 16; 1 John 2:15,16; 5:19.

Finally, he will certainly have the devil to contend with, who with his lies and murder day and night allows him no inner or outer peace, as the Scriptures picture him: John 8:44; Ephesians 6:10-12; 1 Peter 5:8,9; 2 Timothy 2:26.

### **21. But what should you do if you are sick and unable to come to the Lord's Supper?**

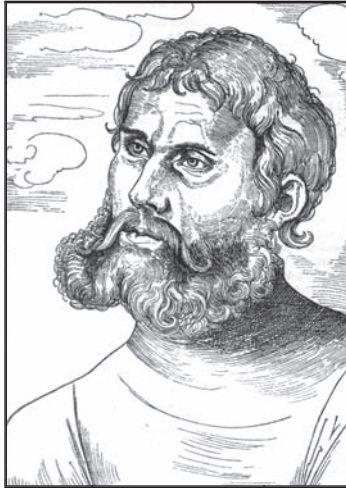
Then I should ask the pastor to come to me, pray with me, and administer the Sacrament to me privately.

### **22. When is the proper time to do this?**

I should ask the pastor, not only when death is near, but early enough, before all physical and mental powers are gone.

### **23. Why should you do this?**

I should do this to receive the assurance in the Sacrament of the body and blood that my sins are forgiven, and that salvation is mine.



---

## THE LIFE OF DR. MARTIN LUTHER

---

BEHOLD, I HAVE SET BEFORE THEE AN OPEN DOOR  
AND NO MAN CAN SHUT IT - REVELATION 3:8

---



### *A Short History*

The author of the Small Catechism is MARTIN LUTHER. He was born to Hans and Margareta Luther on November 10, 1483, in the little city of Eisleben, Germany. This was about nine years before Columbus discovered America.

**EDUCATION.** Luther's parents did not have a lot of money, but they wanted Martin to have an education, so they sent him to school. When he was fourteen years old, he went to the city of Magdeburg to continue his education. While there he often had to beg for food. A year later he went to school in the city of Eisenach. There a kind-hearted woman, Ursula Cotta, took him into her home and cared for him.

At first Martin wanted to become a lawyer. So after his early training his father sent him to the University of Erfurt. That was in the year 1501. Four years later he graduated with a Master of Arts degree.

**THE MONASTERY.** While Luther was growing up, he became more and more troubled by his sins. The leaders of the church at that time (the Roman Catholic Church) were not able to comfort him. They kept telling him that his good works were able to take care of his problem. They had also told him that he should pray to Mary. Nothing worked. One day, as Luther was walking on a road to the university, a bolt of lightning struck very close to him and threw him to the ground. He was afraid of dying. He said, "Help me, dear St. Anna! Save me, and I will become a monk."

So in 1505 Luther became a monk. He went to live in a special place called a cloister or monastery. While there he made a special vow that he would remain poor, never marry, and do without question what his monastery leader said.

While living in the monastery, Martin had the opportunity to study to become a priest. This way he also could study the Bible. He discovered that the leaders of the church were teaching things which were different from what the Bible said. He was finding out that God solved the problem of his sins and the sins of the whole world when He sent His Son Jesus to die on the cross.

In 1508 Luther accepted a position at the newly formed University of Wittenberg. This became his headquarters and home for the rest of his life. He developed a reputation as an excellent teacher and preacher. People came from many, many places just to be in his classes.



## T H E 9 5 T H E S E S

---

READING OVER THE 95 THESES, A COLLEAGUE TOLD LUTHER:  
"YOU TELL THE TRUTH, GOOD BROTHER,  
BUT YOU WILL ACCOMPLISH NOTHING."

---

ANOTHER SAID,  
"THEY WILL NOT STAND FOR IT."  
TO WHICH LUTHER REPLIED:  
"BUT WHAT IF THEY HAVE TO STAND FOR IT?"

---

AS FOR TETZEL, WHEN HE READ THE THESES, HE CROWED:  
"WITHIN THREE WEEKS I SHALL HAVE THIS HERETIC THROWN INTO THE FIRE."

---

## MARTIN LUTHER (CONTINUED)

---

**THE 95 THESES.** At this time the Pope, who is the head of the Roman Catholic Church, needed money to build St. Peter's Church in the city of Rome, Italy. He authorized the sale of indulgences to help pay for this huge building. The indulgences were written letters from the Pope which promised the people who bought them they would not have to suffer so long and so much for their sins in purgatory. However, the people thought they were actually buying the forgiveness of sins.

Luther had learned by now that forgiveness of sins was a free gift of God through His Son Jesus Christ. No one could sell forgiveness. And a piece of paper could not assure heaven to anyone simply because he bought it.

On October 31, 1517, Martin Luther nailed a sheet of paper to the door of the church in Wittenberg. On this paper were 95 sentences (called "theses") which showed that the sale of indulgences was contrary to what the Bible says about forgiveness of sins and repentance.

Ordinarily the theses would have been used in a classroom for a special kind of discussion called a debate. This never happened to these 95 theses. Instead they were quickly printed and distributed all over Europe. Luther's "new" teaching was regarded as false. He was asked to change his mind. The Pope even sent people to talk with him to convince him that what he had said was wrong. Finally in 1520 the Pope gave his official notice and declared that Martin Luther was excommunicated – removed from the church.

The second most powerful man at that time was Emperor Charles V. He ordered a special meeting – called a Diet – to be held to solve the problems created by Martin Luther and his "new" teaching. The Diet was held in the city of Worms, Germany, in April of 1521. There Luther was asked whether he would "recant" – that is; retract, or change his mind about what he had written and taught.

This was Luther's answer: "Unless I am convinced by the Holy Scriptures – for my conscience is taken captive by the Word of God – I cannot and will not recant, for it is neither safe nor right to act against conscience. Here I stand. God help me. Amen." Luther chose to "stand" on – that is, believe – what the Bible said.

With this the Emperor proclaimed that after 20 days anyone in the empire could kill Luther. Some of Martin's friends actually kidnaped him on his way home from Worms and took him to a castle called the Wartburg, where he would be safe. He stayed there almost a year.

**THE LAST TWENTY YEARS.** Luther returned to Wittenberg and continued to teach and write what he learned from the Bible. He was also asked to preach regularly. He wrote many hymns so that the people could once again sing about their Savior. One of his most famous hymns is "A Mighty Fortress Is Our God."

In 1525 he married a former nun, Katherina von Bora. The Lord blessed their marriage with six children.

In 1529 Luther published the Small and Large Catechisms. In these books he wrote down the chief teachings of the Bible so that everyone could learn and understand them.

Luther died on February 18, 1546, in the same city in which he was born. His body was buried beneath the pulpit of the Castle Church in Wittenberg.

**THE MEANING OF THE REFORMATION.** People who write history call the events of Luther's life and the lives of other like-minded men of that time the REFORMATION. Many important Bible teachings were once again being taught by pastors and teachers in the church. Among them were these:

- 1) Justification by faith.** The church had been incorrectly teaching that God would regard people "Not guilty" if they did good works first. Luther discovered from the Bible that God justified all the people of the world (declared them "Not guilty") because of the sacrifice of Jesus Christ on the cross. God leads people through His Spirit to BELIEVE that He has indeed declared them "Not guilty" of their sins.
- 2) The Priesthood of All Believers.** Before the Reformation people had been taught that the only way they could receive the gifts of God was through the church, especially the priests. The Catholic Church had developed a system of seven sacred acts (Sacraments), involving the whole life of the people. The priests alone could administer these Sacraments. Luther noted that the Bible calls all the believers priests before God. Each one could talk directly with God and receive His gifts. Each was given the privilege of using the two Sacraments mentioned in the Bible – Baptism and the Lord's Supper. Each head of the household could be the teacher and spiritual leader of his family.
- 3) The Bible.** Before Luther's time there were very few Bibles. Most of those which did exist were in places where the common people couldn't get at them. They were also written in Latin, a language the people didn't understand. God had already prepared the world for the Reformation by seeing to it that movable metal type for the printing press had been invented. The year was 1454. This made printing much faster and cheaper. Already in 1521 Luther started translating the Bible from its original languages (Hebrew and Greek) into German – the language of his country. This way Luther's countrymen could find out for themselves what God had to say rather than rely on various church leaders.

We in the Lutheran Church appreciate what God accomplished through his servant Martin Luther. We use his Catechism in our instruction classes because it presents in a simple way what the Bible teaches about our Savior from sin, our life as His people while on this earth, and the eternal future He has promised to all who believe in Him.



**THE LUTHER ROSE** was Luther's personal seal. He designed it with these elements in mind: *as one believes with the heart, the cross is superimposed on the heart. Faith brings comfort, purity and peace, as represented by the white rose. Belief and faith bring the promise of heaven, in the blue field behind the rose. A gold ring signifies that "heaven endures forever and ever and is more precious than all pleasures and possessions of earth, as gold is the most precious and the noblest metal."*

LUTHER TO THE COUNCILMEN  
OF ALL CITIES IN GERMANY  
THAT THEY ESTABLISH AND  
MAINTAIN SCHOOLS (1524)

---

“A TOWN DOES NOT THRIVE IN THAT IT ACCUMULATES IMMENSE TREASURES, BUILDS STURDY WALLS, NICE HOUSES, MANY MUSKETS AND SUITS OF ARMOUR ALONE. ON THE CONTRARY, A TOWN’S BEST AND MOST PROSPEROUS PROGRESS, WELFARE AND STRENGTH, COMES FROM HAVING MANY EXCELLENT, EDUCATED, DECENT, HONEST AND WELL BROUGHT-UP CITIZENS.”



The Bible

---



## Why Do We Need the Bible?

### 1. What is the most important thing we can learn?

#### Bible passage:

- 1) John 17:3 - "And this is eternal life, that they may know You, the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom You have sent."

The most important thing we can learn is that God has sent His Son Jesus to be our Savior.

### 2. How can people know about this God?

#### Bible passages:

- 2) Psalm 19:1 - The heavens declare the glory of God; and the firmament shows His handiwork.  
 3) Hebrews 3:4 - For every house is built by someone, but He who built all things is God.

They can know about God from the things He created.

-----

### 3. What can people know about God from what He created?

#### Bible passage:

- 4) Romans 1:20 – For since the creation of the world His invisible attributes are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even His eternal power and Godhead, so that they are without excuse. . . .  
 a. The creation tells that there is a God and that He has unlimited power.

-----

#### Bible passage:

- 5) Romans 2:15 - [The Gentiles] show the work of the law written in their hearts, their conscience also bearing witness, and between themselves their thoughts accusing or else excusing them. . . .  
 b. God created human beings with a conscience. A person's conscience tells him or her that there is a God.

**Conscience:** the inner voice which causes us to feel good when we have done something right and makes us feel guilty when we have done something wrong.

**Bible passage:**

- 6) Acts 14:17- "Nevertheless He did not leave Himself without witness, in that He did good, gave us rain from heaven and fruitful seasons, filling our hearts with food and gladness."
- c. From what He has created people can know that God is good and kind.

*Natural Knowledge of God:* what we can know about God from nature

**4. Can we learn about the forgiveness of sins and eternal life from the things which God created?**

**Bible passages:**

- 7) 1 Corinthians 2:9 - "Eye has not seen, nor ear heard, nor have entered into the heart of man the things which God has prepared for those who love Him."
- 8) Ephesians 2:12 - . . . at that time you (Gentiles) were without Christ . . . having no hope and without God in the world.

No. The things which God has created do not tell us about our Savior from sin and how we can go to heaven.

*Revealed Knowledge of God:* what we can know about God from what He revealed about Himself in the Bible.

**5. Where do we find out what God has done to save us?**

**Bible passages:**

- 9) 2 Timothy 3:15 - . . . and that from childhood you have known the Holy Scriptures, which are able to make you wise for salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.
- 10) John 20:31 - . . . but these are written that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and that believing you may have life in His name.

We learn about the way of salvation from the BIBLE

*Other names for the Bible:* the Holy Bible, Holy Writ, Scripture(s), Holy Scripture(s)

**The Bible is God’s Book**

**6. What is the Bible?**

**Bible passages:**

- 11) 1 Thessalonians 2:13 - . . . when you received the word of God which you heard from us, you welcomed it not as the word of men, but as it is in truth, the word of God . . .
- 12) 1 Peter 1:23 - [You have] been born again, not of corruptible seed but incorruptible, through the word of God which lives and abides forever . . .

The Bible is the Word of God.

## **7. Who wrote the Bible?**

### **Bible passages:**

- 13) 2 Peter 1:21 - . . . holy men of God spoke as they were moved by the Holy Spirit.
- 14) Hebrews 1:1,2 - God, who at various times and in different ways spoke in time past to the fathers by the prophets, has in these last days spoken to us by His Son.
- 15) 1 Corinthians 2:13 - These things we also speak, not in words which man's wisdom teaches but which the Holy Spirit teaches.

The Holy Spirit (the 3rd Person of God) is the author of the Bible. He used "holy men" to write His book.

- a. The holy men used by the Spirit to write the books of the Old Testament are called "Moses and the prophets." They wrote the Bible books before Christ came. They wrote from about 1500 BC to 400 BC (BC = before Christ)
- b. The holy men used by the Spirit to write the books of the New Testament are called "apostles" and "evangelists." They wrote the Bible books after Christ came into the world. They did their work from about AD 40 to AD 100 (AD = "in the year of our Lord," from the Latin "Anno Domini").

## **8. What are some of the features of the book called the Bible?**

- a. The Bible is divided into two parts: the Old Testament and the New Testament. Much of the Old Testament tells the history of God's people before Christ came. Other parts are poetry or prophecy.

The first four books of the New Testament are called Gospels. They tell about the life of Jesus and the work He did to save people. The book of Acts is a history of the early Church. The epistles tell the meaning of Christ's work and how it applies to us now and for our future.

**1) The Old Testament has 39 books. They are:**

**Historical books:**

Genesis	Joshua	1 Kings	Nehemiah
Exodus	Judges	2 Kings	Esther
Leviticus	Ruth	1 Chronicles	
Numbers	1 Samuel	2 Chronicles	
Deuteronomy	2 Samuel	Ezra	

**Books of poetry**

Job	Psalms	Proverbs	Ecclesiastes	Song of Solomon
-----	--------	----------	--------------	-----------------

**Books of Prophecy**

Isaiah	Hosea	Micah	Zechariah
Jeremiah	Joel	Nahum	Malachi
Lamentations	Amos	Habakkuk	
Ezekiel	Obadiah	Zephaniah	
Daniel	Jonah	Haggai	

**2) There are 27 books in the New Testament. They are:**

**Historical books:**

Matthew	Mark	Luke	John	Acts
---------	------	------	------	------

**Epistles (Letters):**

Romans	Colossians	Philemon	1 John
1 Corinthians	1 Thessalonians	Hebrews	2 John
2 Corinthians	2 Thessalonians	James	3 John
Galatians	1 Timothy	1 Peter	Jude
Ephesians	2 Timothy	2 Peter	
Philippians	Titus		

**Book of Prophecy:**

Revelation

b. There are 66 books in the Bible. These are sometimes called the “canonical” books of the Bible. Canon means a “ruler” or “according to a measuring stick” and refers to those books which the Holy Spirit actually caused men to write.

Some versions of the Bible have books called the Apocrypha. These are not part of the inspired Scriptures.

c. The Bible was first written in the Hebrew (Old Testament) and Greek (New Testament) languages. The Bible has been translated into many languages. We, of course, read it in the English (American) language. Some of the English translations commonly used in our day are:

The King James Version (1611 - the year it was translated)

New American Standard Bible (1960)

An American Translation (1976 - the “Beck” Bible)

The New International Version (1978)

The New King James Version (1983)

The New King James Version of the Bible is being used in this Catechism.

## **9. How can the Bible be the Word of God when it was written by human beings?**

### **Bible passages:**

16) 2 Timothy 3:16 - All Scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness.

17) 2 Peter 1:21 - . . . holy men of God spoke as they were moved by the Holy Spirit.

18) 1 Corinthians 2:13 - These things we also speak, not in words which man’s wisdom teaches but which the Holy Spirit teaches . . .

All the words of the Bible are the Word of God, because the Holy Spirit gave the holy writers the thoughts and the very words which He wanted in His Book. (Verbal Inspiration)

*Inspire:* “to breathe into.” The Holy Spirit “breathed into” the prophets, apostles, and evangelists the words which they wrote. It is “verbal inspiration” – word for word.

## 10. What does the Bible say about itself?

### Bible passages:

19) John 17:17 - "Sanctify them by Your truth. Your word is truth."

20) John 10:35 - . . . the Scripture cannot be broken . . .

- a. The Bible is true and tells the truth. It does not contain any errors on any subject of which it speaks – even when it mentions matters of geography, science, and history.

-----

### Bible passage:

21) Psalm 119:105 - Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light to my path.

- b. The Bible is clear and gives its readers information about the way God would have them go – especially, the way to eternal life through faith in Jesus Christ.

-----

### Bible narrative:

22) Luke 16:19-31 - In a parable Jesus explained that the Bible has everything people need to know about their Savior and how to go to heaven. To a lost soul concerned about his brothers Abraham said, "They have Moses and the prophets; let them hear them" (v.29).

- c. The Bible has all the information human beings need so they can learn about their Savior from sin and become wise to salvation through faith in Him.

## 11. How are we to use the Bible?

### Bible narrative:

- 23) Acts 17:10-12 - The Christians in Berea checked on what the apostle Paul told them by looking in their Bibles.

### Bible passages:

- 24) Luke 11:28 - “. . . blessed are those who hear the word of God and keep it!”
- 25) 2 Timothy 3:15 - . . . from childhood you have known the Holy Scriptures, which are able to make you wise for salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.
- a. Jesus invites us to:
- 1) Search in the Scriptures to learn about the Savior and the meaning of His work.
  - 2) Hear and study the Scriptures for our spiritual health and well-being.
  - 3) Learn from the Scriptures if someone is telling God’s truth or if someone is teaching something made up by a human being.

-----

### Bible narrative:

- 26) Revelation 22:18,19 - God does not want us to add anything to, or take anything away from, His Bible.

### Bible passage:

- 27) Deuteronomy 4:2 - You shall not add to the word which I command you, nor take anything from it, that you may keep the commandments of the Lord your God which I command you.
- b. God does not want us to change His Word by adding our own thoughts to what He said or subtract from what He said.

-----

### Bible passages:

- 28) 2 Peter 1:16 - For we did not follow cunningly devised fables when we made known to you the power and coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.
- 29) 2 Peter 3:16 - . . . as also in all his epistles, [Paul speaks] in them of these things, in which are some things hard to understand, which those who are untaught and unstable twist to their own destruction, as they do also the rest of the Scriptures.
- c. Our God does not want us to change His Word by twisting its meaning to suit our own ideas or by using word tricks to confuse people.



## 12. How can we be sure that the Bible is really God’s Word?

### **Bible passages:**

- 30) Hebrews 4:12 - For the word of God is living and powerful, and sharper than any two-edged sword, piercing even to the division of soul and spirit, and of joints and marrow, and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart.
- 31) Luke 24:32 - [The Emmaus disciples] said to one another, “Did not our heart burn within us while He talked with us on the road, and while He opened the Scriptures to us?”
  - a. The Bible proves its power in our hearts.

-----

### **Bible passages:**

- 32) 2 Timothy 3:16 - All Scripture is given by inspiration of God and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness.
- 33) Luke 11:28 - “. . . blessed are those who hear the word of God and keep it.”
  - b. The Bible says so.

-----

### **Bible passages:**

- 34) Luke 16:29 - “[Abraham said], ‘They have Moses and the prophets; let them hear them.’”
- 35) John 10:35 - The Scripture cannot be broken.
- 36) Matthew 26:56 - “But all this was done that the Scriptures of the prophets might be fulfilled.”
  - c. Jesus says so.

-----

### **Bible passage:**

- 37) Matthew 26:56 - “But all this was done that the Scriptures of the prophets might be fulfilled.”
  - d. Prophecies have been and are being fulfilled.



## Law and Gospel

### 13. What are the two main doctrines of the Bible?

#### Bible passage

38) John 1:17 - For the law was given through Moses, but grace and truth came through Jesus Christ.

The two main doctrines of the Bible are LAW and GOSPEL.

*Doctrine:*  
"teaching,"  
"what is taught."

### 14. What is the law?

#### Bible passages:

39) Leviticus 19:2 - You shall be holy, for I the LORD your God am holy.

40) Exodus 20:1-17 - You shall . . . You shall not . . .  
(The Ten Commandments)

41) Galatians 3:10 - "Cursed is everyone who does not continue in all things which are written in the book of the law, to do them."

The LAW is God's word which tells us what to do and what not to do and the punishment for breaking it.

### 15. What do we learn from God's law?

#### Bible narrative:

42) 2 Samuel 12:1-23 - Nathan told King David that he had sinned by despising the commandment of the Lord.

#### Bible passages:

43) Romans 7:7 - I would not have known sin except through the law. For I would not have known covetousness unless the law had said, "You shall not covet."

44) Romans 3:20 - . . . for by the law is the knowledge of sin.

45) Romans 6:23 - For the wages of sin is death . . .

From God's law we learn what He wants us to do and not do. God wants us to use His law to learn something about ourselves. From the law we discover that we are sinful. Cf. Question 25.

*Sin:* "missing the mark", "breaking God's law"  
*Death:* "separation."  
Eternal death is the ultimate punishment for sin. A person would be separated from God forever in hell.  
Cf. Question 151

## 16. What is the gospel?

*Gospel: "good news"*

### Bible passages:

- 46) Romans 1:16 - For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ, for it is the power of God to salvation for everyone who believes, for the Jew first and also for the Greek.
- 47) John 3:16 - For God so loved the world that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him should not perish but have everlasting life.
- 48) Luke 2:10,11 - Then the angel said to them, "Do not be afraid, for behold, I bring you good tidings of great joy which will be to all people. For there is born to you this day in the city of David a Savior, who is Christ the Lord."

The GOSPEL is God's word which tells of His great love in Jesus, whom He sent to die to save us from our sins.

## 17. How are the law and the gospel the same?

- 1. The law and the gospel are both words from our God.
- 2. The law and the gospel both have something to say to mankind.

## 18. How are the law and the gospel different?

### Bible passages:

- 49) Matthew 22:37,39 - "You shall love the Lord your God with all your heart, with all your soul, and with all your mind' . . . 'You shall love your neighbor as yourself."
- 50) Romans 3:20 - Therefore by the deeds of the law no flesh will be justified in His sight, for by the law is the knowledge of sin.
- 51) Romans 3:23,24 - . . . for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God, being justified freely by His grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus . . .
- 52) Romans 8:3,4 - For what the law could not do in that it was weak through the flesh, God did by sending His own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, on account of sin: He condemned sin in the flesh, that the righteous requirement of the law might be fulfilled in us . . .
- 53) Psalm 119:32 - I will run in the way of Your commandments, for You shall enlarge my heart.

### The Law

- What we are to do and not to do.
- "Bad news" (Death)
- Defines our works
- Condemns and damns
- SOS (Shows our sin)

### The Gospel

- What God Has done for us in Christ and continues to do for us through His Spirit.
- "Good news" (Life)
- Tells of God's grace
- Announces forgiveness and saves
- SOS (Shows our Savior)

## 19. So what is the Bible really all about?

### Bible passages:

- 54) Romans 15:4 - For whatever things were written before were written for our learning, that we through the patience and comfort of the Scriptures might have hope.
- 55) John 20:31 - . . . but these are written that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and that believing you may have life in His name.

From beginning to end the Bible brings us the good news about Jesus so that we believe in Him and have eternal life.

**Grace:** "undeserved kindness." God does us a special, miraculous "favor" by sending Jesus to be the Savior.

The First Commandment	-----
The Second Commandment	-----
The Third Commandment	-----
The Fourth Commandment	-----
The Fifth Commandment	-----
The Sixth Commandment	-----
The Seventh Commandment	-----
The Eighth Commandment	-----
The Ninth Commandment	-----
The Tenth Commandment	-----
The Conclusion to the Commandments	-----

**THE TEN COMMANDMENTS**  
AND GOD SPOKE ALL THESE WORDS, SAYING:

I AM THE **LORD** YOUR **GOD**, WHO BROUGHT YOU OUT OF THE LAND OF EGYPT, OUT OF THE HOUSE OF BONDAGE.

YOU SHALL HAVE NO OTHER GODS BEFORE **ME**.

YOU SHALL NOT MAKE FOR YOURSELF A CARVED IMAGE ANY LIKENESS OF ANYTHING THAT IS IN HEAVEN ABOVE, OR THAT IS IN THE

EARTH BENEATH, OR THAT IS IN THE WATER UNDER THE EARTH;

YOU SHALL NOT BOW DOWN TO THEM NOR SERVE THEM.

FOR I, THE **LORD** YOUR **GOD**, AM A JEALOUS **GOD**, VISITING THE INIQUITY OF THE FATHERS UPON THE CHILDREN TO THE THIRD AND FOURTH GENERATIONS OF THOSE WHO HATE **ME**, BUT SHOWING MERCY TO THOUSANDS, OF THOSE WHO LOVE **ME**

AND KEEP **MY** COMMANDMENTS.

YOU SHALL NOT TAKE THE NAME OF THE **LORD** YOUR **GOD** IN VAIN, FOR THE **LORD** WILL NOT HOLD HIM GUILTLSS WHO TAKES HIS NAME IN VAIN.

REMEMBER THE **SABBATH** DAY, TO KEEP IT HOLY. **SIX** DAYS YOU SHALL LABOR AND DO ALL YOUR WORK, BUT THE **SEVENTH** DAY IS THE **SABBATH** OF THE **LORD** YOUR **GOD**. IN IT YOU SHALL DO NO WORK: YOU, NOR YOUR SON, NOR YOUR DAUGHTER, NOR YOUR MALE SERVANT, NOR YOUR FEMALE SERVANT, NOR YOUR CATTLE, NOR YOUR STRANGER WHO IS WITHIN YOUR GATES. FOR IN **SIX** DAYS THE **LORD** MADE THE HEAVENS AND THE EARTH, THE SEA, AND ALL THAT IS IN THEM, AND RESTED THE **SEVENTH** DAY. THEREFORE THE **LORD** BLESSED THE **SABBATH** DAY AND HALLOWED IT.

HONOR YOUR FATHER AND YOUR MOTHER, THAT YOUR DAYS MAY BE LONG UPON THE LAND WHICH THE **LORD** YOUR **GOD** IS GIVING YOU.

YOU SHALL NOT MURDER.

YOU SHALL NOT COMMIT ADULTERY.

YOU SHALL NOT STEAL.

YOU SHALL NOT BEAR FALSE WITNESS AGAINST YOUR NEIGHBOR.

YOU SHALL NOT COVET YOUR NEIGHBOR'S HOUSE; YOU SHALL NOT COVET YOUR NEIGHBOR'S WIFE, NOR HIS MALE SERVANT, NOR HIS FEMALE SERVANT, NOR HIS OX, NOR HIS DONKEY, NOR ANYTHING THAT IS YOUR NEIGHBOR'S.

**Exodus 20:1-17**

## THE LAW - THE TEN COMMANDMENTS

---



### 20. How did God give us His law?

#### Bible passages:

- 56) **Romans 2:14,15** - . . . for when Gentiles, who do not have the law, by nature do the things contained in the law, these, although not having the law, are a law to themselves, who show the work of the law written in their hearts. . .
- a) God writes the law into peoples' hearts. They have an idea about what is right and wrong without anyone telling them; however, this knowledge is imperfect because of sin.

-----

#### Bible passages:

- 57) **Romans 2:15** - . . . [The Gentiles] show the work of the law written in their hearts, their conscience also bearing witness, and between themselves their thoughts accusing or else excusing them . . .
- 58) **1 Corinthians 8:7** - However, there is not in everyone that knowledge; for some, with consciousness of the idol, until now eat it as a thing offered to an idol; and their conscience, being weak, is defiled.
- b) God gave human beings a conscience. This inner voice works when a person is making a decision which involves something that is either right or wrong. Sometimes a person's conscience tells him that something is a sin which God did not say is a sin. This individual has a faulty conscience. Conscience is not automatically a reliable guide in letting people know what is right or wrong. Only a conscience bound by the word of God can be trusted.

-----

#### Bible narratives:

- 59) **Exodus 20:1-17** - God gave the children of Israel the Ten Commandments through Moses.
- 60) **Deuteronomy 5:1-22** - This is a second record of God giving the Ten Commandments. Note especially v. 22 - "And He wrote them on two tablets of stone and gave them to me."

#### Bible passage:

- 61) **Exodus 34:28** - And He wrote on the tablets the words of the covenant, the Ten Commandments.
- c) By writing the law down God made sure that human beings would know exactly what He wanted them to do and not to do.

### **21. What areas of life were covered in the law God gave to Israel?**

**a. Civil laws.** Some of the laws recorded in the Old Testament were civil laws. They regulated the everyday life of the Jewish people and the nation of Israel. (For example, the animal control laws recorded in Exodus 21:28f)

**b. Ceremonial laws.** Many of the laws recorded in the Old Testament were ceremonial laws. These regulated the worship life of the people of Israel. From them the people learned about sacrifices and their meaning. Their worship pointed to Jesus Christ - that the shedding of blood was necessary for the forgiveness of sins. (For example, the sacrifices for the Day of Atonement, Leviticus 16)

The first worship center for the people of Israel was the tabernacle, a temporary church which they used in the wilderness and for a while in the Promised Land. Later God told King Solomon to build the temple, which became the permanent worship home of the nation.

**c. Moral laws.** There are certain actions which are always right or wrong. Moral law presents God's will for all people of all time. We use the Ten Commandments as recorded in the Old Testament as a convenient summary of God's holy will for all people. We know that the content of the Ten Commandments is moral law and applies to everyone, since the commandments are repeated in various places in the New Testament.

It is important to remember that the Ten Commandments recorded in Exodus 20:1-17 and Deuteronomy 5:6-21 include a requirement which only applied to the Jews. God required that they worship on Saturday (Third Commandment). In Colossians 2:16 He tells us that, since Christ came, the requirement that people worship on Saturday no longer applies, but God expects people to worship Him.

### **22. Why did God begin the Commandments with, "I am the LORD, your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage"?**

#### **Bible passages:**

62) **Psalm 95:6,7** - Oh come, let us worship and bow down; let us kneel before the LORD our Maker. For He is our God, and we are the people of His pasture and the sheep of His hand.

63) **Isaiah 49:26** - . . . "I, the LORD, am your Savior, and your Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob."



## THE LAW - TEN COMMANDMENTS (CONTINUED)

---

64) **Isaiah 43:11** - “. . . I, even I, am the LORD, and besides Me there is no savior.”

In saying, “I am the LORD, your God,” He reminds us that He is our Maker, Redeemer, and Savior. It is His loving will to rescue us from sin, death, and hell.

### **23. Why does God remind us about who He is just before He gave these commandments?**

#### **Bible passages:**

65) **1 John 4:19** - We love Him because He first loved us.

66) **Exodus 20:6** - “. . . but showing mercy to thousands, to those who love Me and keep My commandments.”

God is impressing on us who He is so that we are happy and willing to obey His commandments.

### **24. Which word summarizes what God expects of His people living during the New Testament time?**

#### **Bible passage:**

67) **Romans 13:10** - . . . therefore love is the fulfillment of the law.

a. The word love summarizes what God expects of us.

-----

#### **Bible passage:**

68) **Matthew 22:37** - “ . . . You shall love the LORD your God with all your heart, with all your soul, and with all your mind.”

b. Our God expects people to love Him more than anything else. This is sometimes called the First Table of the Law. It deals with our duty to God.

-----

#### **Bible passage:**

69) **Matthew 22:39** - You shall love your neighbor as yourself.

c. God also expects us to love other people. This is called the Second Table of the Law. It treats of our duty toward our neighbor.

<i>Neighbor:</i> any other person, one of your fellowmen
--

**25. What purpose does the law serve?**

**Bible passages:**

- 70) **1 Timothy 1:9,10** - . . . the law is not made for a righteous person, but for the lawless and insubordinate, for the ungodly and for sinners, for the unholy and profane, for murderers of fathers and murderers of mothers, for manslayers, for fornicators, for sodomites, for kidnappers, for liars, for perjurers, and if there is any other thing that is contrary to sound doctrine.
- 71) **Romans 2:14** - . . . for when Gentiles, who do not have the law, by nature do the things contained in the law, these, although not having the law, are a law to themselves. . .
- a. God's law serves as a CURB for all the people in the world when it stops them from doing wicked, sinful deeds. (It works like a leash.)

-----

**Bible passages:**

- 72) **Romans 3:20** - . . . for by the law is the knowledge of sin.
- 73) **Romans 7:7** - "I would not have known sin except through the law. For I would not have known covetousness unless the law had said, 'You shall not covet.'"
- 74) **Galatians 3:24** - Therefore the law was our tutor [up to] Christ, that we might be justified by faith.
- b. God's law serves as a MIRROR when it shows people their sin and need for a Savior.

-----

**Bible passages:**

- 75) **Psalms 119:105** - Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light to my path.
- 76) **Psalms 119:9** - How can a young man cleanse his way? By taking heed according to Your word.
- 77) **Psalms 119:32** - I will run in the way of Your commandments, for You shall enlarge my heart.
- 78) **Romans 12:1,2** - I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that you present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable to God, which is your reasonable service. And do not be conformed to this world, but be transformed by the renewing of your mind, that you may prove what is that good and acceptable and perfect will of God.
- c. God's law serves as a GUIDE when it informs Christians about the kind of life He expects them to live. (It serves like a map which shows the way to go but does not provide the power for a person to go that way.)

THE FIRST COMMANDMENT

**(God Himself)**



You shall have no other gods

***What does this mean?***

We should fear, love, and trust in God above all things.

**26. Who is the true God?**

**Bible narratives:**

- 79) Matthew 3:16,17 - All the persons of God were present when Jesus was baptized.
- 80) John 15:26 - The Holy Spirit was sent by the Father and the Son.
- 81) Genesis 1 - The three persons of God were involved in the creation. (v. 26 - "Let Us make man . . .")

**Bible passages:**

- 82) Isaiah 42:8 - "I am the LORD, that is My name; and My glory I will not give to another, nor My praise to graven images."
- 83) Deuteronomy 6:4 - "Hear, O Israel: The LORD our God, the LORD is one!"
- 84) 1 Corinthians 8:4 - . . . there is no other God but one.
  - a. There is only one God.

-----

**Bible passages:**

- 85) Matthew 28:19 - "Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit. . ."
- 86) 2 Corinthians 13:14 - The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Spirit be with you all. (Apostolic Blessing)
- 87) Numbers 6:24-26 - "The LORD bless you and keep you; The LORD make His face shine upon you, and be gracious to you; The LORD lift up His countenance upon you, and give you peace."
  - b. God has revealed Himself as the Triune God, Father, Son, and Holy Spirit - three Persons in one Being. (Trinity)

God uses other names to tell us about Himself: Jehovah, Lord, Jesus, Savior, Redeemer, etc.

**Triune and Trinity:** three-in-one, usually only used to describe God. Neither of these words is found in the Bible.

## 27. What does God expect of us in the First Commandment?

God expects that we fear, love, and trust in Him above everything else.

- a. The fear of God

### **Bible narratives:**

- 88) Daniel 3:1-18 - Three believing men chose the punishment of the fiery furnace rather than worship a false god.  
89) Genesis 39:1-9 - Joseph rejected the temptations of Potiphar's wife.

### **Bible passages:**

- 90) Psalm 33:8 - Let all the earth fear the LORD; let all the inhabitants of the world stand in awe of Him.  
91) Proverbs 8:13 - The fear of the LORD is to hate evil. . .  
92) Genesis 39:9 - "How then can I do this great wickedness and sin against God?"

We fear God above everything else when we give all glory to Him and respect Him.

-----

- b. The love of God

**Fear:** in the Bible sense - give all glory to, respect, stand in awe of; revere

### **Bible narrative:**

- 93) Genesis 22:1-19 - Because he loved God more than anything else, Abraham was willing to sacrifice his son Isaac when God asked him to.

### **Bible passages:**

- 94) Matthew 22:37 - "You shall love the LORD your God with all your heart, with all your soul, and with all your mind."  
95) Psalm 73:25,26 - Whom have I in heaven but You? And there is none upon earth that I desire besides You. My flesh and my heart fail; but God is the strength of my heart and my portion forever.  
96) 2 Corinthians 5:14 - For the love of Christ constrains (controls) us. . .

We love God above everything else when He is more precious to us than any thing or person in our lives. Love is the spirit with which we give all glory to God.

-----

- c. Trust in God

### **Bible narratives:**

- 97) 1 Samuel 17:32-50 - David trusted God more than anything or anyone else to give him the victory over the giant Goliath.  
98) Daniel 6:1-23 - Daniel trusted that God would protect him in the lion's den. (v.23 - ". . . and no injury whatever was found on him, because he believed [trusted] in his God.")  
99) Daniel 3:1-18 - The three men in the fiery furnace.

### **Bible passages:**

- 100) Psalm 37:5 - Commit your way to the LORD, trust also in Him, and He shall bring it to pass.
- 101) Psalm 115:11 - You who fear the LORD, trust in the LORD; He is their help and their shield.
- 102) Psalm 84:12 - O LORD of hosts, blessed is the man who trusts in You!
- 103) Psalm 118:8 - It is better to trust in the LORD than to put confidence in man.
- 104) Psalm 124:8 - Our help is in the name of the LORD, Who made heaven and earth.

We trust in God above everything else when we rely on Him alone and put our entire confidence in Him.

## **28. What sin does God forbid in the First Commandment?**

### **Bible narratives:**

- 105) Exodus 32 - The children of Israel worshiped the golden calf.
- 106) Isaiah 44:6-20 - God describes how foolish it is to use one part of a piece of wood to make an idol and a another part of the same piece to build a fire.

### **Bible passage:**

- 107) Exodus 20:4,5 - "You shall not make for yourself any carved image, or any likeness of anything that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth; you shall not bow down to them nor serve them. . ."

The sin against the First Commandment is called IDOLATRY.

<p><i>Idol</i>: a false (wrong) god</p> <p><i>Idolatry</i>: worship of a false god or using a substitute for God</p>
--

## **29. In what ways do people commit idolatry?**

- a. Open idolatry

### **Bible passages:**

- 108) Psalm 115:3,4 - But our God is in heaven; He does whatever He pleases. Their idols are silver and gold, the work of men's hands.
- 109) 1 John 5:21 - Little children, keep yourselves from idols.
- 110) Isaiah 42:8 - "I am the LORD, that is My name; and my glory I will not give to another, nor my praise to graven images."
- 111) Matthew 4:10 - "' . . . You shall worship the LORD your God, and Him only you shall serve.'"

- 112) John 5:23 - “. . . all should honor the Son just as they honor the Father. He who does not honor the Son does not honor the Father who sent Him.”
- 113) 1 John 2:23 - Whoever denies the Son does not have the Father either; he who acknowledges the Son has the Father also.
- 114) 2 John 9 - Whoever transgresses and does not abide in the doctrine of Christ does not have God.
- 115) Romans 1:23 - [They] changed the glory of the incorruptible God into an image made like corruptible man - and birds and four-footed beasts and creeping things.

People commit open idolatry when they worship the wrong god. Those who do not honor Jesus Christ do not have the right God.

Some of the idols mentioned in the Bible are Baal, Dagan, Asherah, Moloch, Chemosh, Ashtaroth, the Golden Calf, Artemis (Diana), Zeus (Jupiter), Hermes (Mercury).

-----

b. Secret idolatry

**Bible narratives:**

- 116) Matthew 19:16-22 - A rich young ruler loved his possessions more than Christ.
- 117) Luke 12:15-21 - Jesus warns us that a man’s life does not consist in the abundance of the things he owns.

**Bible passages:**

- 118) Matthew 10:37 - “He who loves father or mother more than Me is not worthy of Me. And he who loves son or daughter more than Me is not worthy of Me.”
- 119) Matthew 6:24 - “You cannot serve God and mammon.”
- 120) Psalm 62:10 - . . . If riches increase, do not set your heart on them.
- 121) Mark 10:24 - “. . . how hard it is for those who trust in riches to enter the kingdom of God!”
- 122) Philippians 3:19 - . . . whose end is destruction, whose god is their belly, and whose glory is in their shame - who set their mind on earthly things.
- 123) Proverbs 3:5 - Trust in the LORD with all your heart, and lean not on your own understanding . . .
- 124) 1 John 2:15 - Do not love the world or the things in the world. If anyone loves the world, the love of the Father is not in him.
- 125) Jeremiah 17:5 - “Cursed is the man who trusts in man and makes flesh his strength (arm), whose heart departs from the LORD.”

**Mammon:** money when it becomes a god

People commit secret idolatry when they fear, love, and trust someone or something as God. Martin Luther once said, "That upon which you set your heart and put your trust is in reality your god."

**Atheist:** person who says there is a no god (cf. Psalm 14:)

### **30. What do we learn about ourselves from this commandment?**

As a mirror the First Commandment shows us that we have not feared, loved and trusted in God above all things. He has not always been first in our lives.

### **31. How did Jesus fulfill this commandment for us?**

#### **Bible narrative:**

126) Matthew 4:1-11 - When Jesus was tempted by the devil, He always kept God first and used His Word to fight off the temptations.

#### **Bible passages:**

- 127) John 8:46 - "Which of you convicts Me of sin? And if I tell the truth, why do you not believe Me?"
- 128) Romans 5:19 - For as by one man's disobedience many were made sinners, so also by one Man's obedience many will be made righteous.
- 129) Titus 2:14 - [Jesus] gave Himself for us, that He might redeem us from every lawless deed and purify for Himself His own special people, zealous for good works.

Jesus fulfilled this commandment and all the others perfectly. His death on the cross was the punishment for all our sins.



**(God's Name)**

Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord your God in vain.

***What does this mean?***

We should fear and love God that we do not use His name to curse, swear, practice witchcraft, lie, or deceive; but we should call upon His name in every trouble, pray, praise, and give thanks.

**32. What is the name of God?**

**Bible passages:**

- 130) Exodus 20:2 - "I am the LORD, your God. . ."
- 131) Isaiah 42:8 - "I am the LORD, that is My name; and My glory I will not give to another, nor My praise to graven images."
- 132) Matthew 1:21 - "And she will bring forth a Son, and you shall call His name JESUS, for He will save His people from their sins."

a. God's name is every word which IDENTIFIES who He is.

-----  
**Bible passages:**

- 133) John 17:6 - "I have manifested Your name to the men whom You have given Me out of the world."
- 134) Jeremiah 23:6 - "In His days Judah will be saved, and Israel will dwell safely; now this is His name by which He will be called: THE LORD OUR RIGHTEOUSNESS."

b. God's name also DESCRIBES who He is and what He has done.

God's name is everything He has told us about Himself.

**33. Why did God give us His name?**

**Bible passages:**

- 135) Psalm 103:1,3 - Bless the LORD, O my soul; and all that is within me, bless His holy name! . . . Who forgives all your iniquities.
- 136) Exodus 20:24 - "'In every place where I record My name I will come to you, and I will bless you.'"
- 137) Romans 10:13 - For "whoever calls upon the name of the LORD shall be saved."
- 138) Exodus 20:7 - ". . . for the LORD will not hold him guiltless who takes His name in vain."



God revealed His name to us in order to give us His blessings, especially faith in His Son for the forgiveness of our sins. Since God's name is to be used for blessing people, He wants us to be careful so that we do not misuse it. Abusing God's name deprives people of the blessings God intends for human beings through its proper use.

### 34. What are some ways that people misuse God's name?

a. Cursing

#### Bible narratives:

- 139) Exodus 5 - Pharaoh defied God and His servant Moses and would not let the people go.
- 140) Daniel 3 - Nebuchadnezzar defied God and commanded everyone to worship the idol he had made.

#### Bible passage:

- 141) Leviticus 24:15 - "' . . . whoever curses his God shall bear his sin.'"

*Curse:* to wish and speak evil

*Blaspheme:* to curse God or make fun of Him

We should not curse God.

#### Bible narratives:

- 142) 1 Samuel 17:43 - Goliath cursed David by his gods.
- 143) 2 Samuel 16:5-8 - Shimei, a member of the family of Saul, cursed King David.

#### Bible passages:

- 144) James 3:10 - Out of the same mouth proceed blessing and cursing. My brethren, these things ought not to be so.
- 145) Romans 12:14 - Bless those who persecute you; bless and do not curse.

We should not misuse God's name by wishing or speaking evil of any person, creature, or thing.

-----

b. Swearing

#### Bible passages:

- 146) Matthew 26:63,64 - And the high priest answered and said to Him, "I adjure You by the living God that You tell us if You are the Christ, the Son of God." Jesus said to him, "It is as you said."
- 147) Hebrews 6:16 - For men indeed swear by the greater, and an oath for confirmation is for them an end of all dispute.

*Swear:* take on oath

*Adjure:* to put under oath

Swearing by God's name is a way used (usually in court-rooms) to assure that a person is going to tell the truth. Swearing in this way is not forbidden by God.

**Bible narratives:**

- 148) 1 Kings 21:1-16 - Jezebel hired some people to lie about Nabath, even though they were under oath to tell the truth.
- 149) Mark 6:21-28 - Herod swore when he was uncertain about what would happen.
- 150) Matthew 5:33-37 - Jesus warned people about the misuse of oaths.

**Bible passages:**

- 151) Leviticus 19:12 - "And you shall not swear by My name falsely, nor shall you profane the name of your God: I am the LORD."

God does not want us to swear when planning to lie, or to swear needlessly or in connection with something uncertain.

*Perjury:* lying after swearing to tell the truth

-----

c. Practice witchcraft

**Bible narrative:**

- 152) 1 Samuel 28 - King Saul sought help through the witch of En Dor.
- 153) Acts 13:4-12 - Barjesus and Elymas were sorcerers (they practiced witchcraft).

**Bible passage:**

- 154) Deuteronomy 18:10-12 - There shall not be found among you anyone who makes his son or his daughter pass through the fire, or one who practices witchcraft, or a soothsayer, or one who interprets omens, or a sorcerer, or one who conjures spells, or a medium, or a spiritist, or one who calls up the dead. For all who do these things are an abomination to the LORD . . .

- 1) God does not want us to use His name to practice a type of worship which is not found in the Bible.
- 2) He also does not want us to try to find out things from anyone in a way which differs from His Word. For example: tarot cards, palm reading, astrology, tea leaves, crystal balls, phrenology (head bumps), fortune cookies, or from ouija boards.
- 3) God does not want us to try to contact the dead through mediums and spiritists.
- 4) He does not want us to believe in anything which His Word does not give us a right to trust: four-leaf clovers, rabbits' feet, relics, good luck charms, or lucky numbers.

d. Using God's name to lie - false teachers

**Bible passages:**

- 155) Jeremiah 23:31 - "Behold, I am against the prophets," says the LORD, "who use their tongues and say, 'He says.'"
- 156) Jeremiah 14:14 - And the LORD said to me, "The prophets prophesy lies in My name. I have not sent them, commanded them, nor spoken to them; they prophesy to you a false vision, divination, a worthless thing, and the deceit of their heart."
- 157) Matthew 7:15 - "Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous wolves."
- 158) Romans 16:17 - Now I urge you, brethren, note those who cause divisions and offenses, contrary to the doctrine which you learned, and avoid them.
- 159) Matthew 15:9 - "'And in vain they worship Me, teaching as doctrines the commandments of men.'"

God does not want us to use His name to say He said things which He really didn't say.

-----

e. Using God's name to deceive - being a hypocrite

**Bible narrative:**

- 160) Acts 5:1-11 - Ananias and Sapphira pretended to give a larger gift to the Lord than they actually did.

**Bible passage:**

- 161) Matthew 15:7-8 - "Hypocrites! Well did Isaiah prophesy about you, saying, 'These people draw near to Me with their mouth, and honor Me with their lips, but their heart is far from Me.'"

God does not want people to use His name to make other people think they are believers when they really are not.

*Hypocrite:* from the Greek word for actor, who wore a mask and was "two-faced"; one who is pretending to be someone other than who he or she really is.

### 35. How does God want us to use His name?

#### Bible passages:

162) Psalm 50:15 - "Call upon Me in the day of trouble; I will deliver you, and you shall glorify Me."

163) Psalm 130:1 - Out of the depths I have cried to You, O LORD; Lord, hear my voice! Let Your ears be attentive to the voice of my supplications.

- a. God invites us to use His name to call upon Him when we are in trouble.

-----

#### Bible passage:

164) 1 Thessalonians 5:17 - . . . pray without ceasing.

165) Matthew 7:7 - "Ask, and it will be given to you; seek and you will find; knock, and it will be opened to you."

166) John 16:23 - ". . . whatever you ask the Father in My name He will give you."

- b. God wants us to use His name when we pray.

<p><i>Prayer:</i> any heart-to heart talk with God: request, praise, confession, thanks, etc.</p>
---

-----

#### Bible passage:

167) 1 Peter 2:9 - But you are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, His own special people, that you may proclaim the praises of Him who called you out of darkness into His marvelous light.

168) Mark 16:15 - "Go into all the world and preach the gospel to every creature."

169) Isaiah 43:21 - "This people I have formed for Myself; they shall declare My praise."

- c. God wants us to praise His name by telling the Gospel of forgiveness of sins in Jesus Christ to other people. (Mission work)

-----

#### Bible passages:

170) Psalm 118:1 - Oh, give thanks to the LORD, for He is good! Because His mercy endures forever.

171) Ephesians 5:20 - . . . giving thanks always for all things to God the Father in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ . . .

- d. God wants us to use His name to thank Him for everything He has done for us, especially for sending Jesus to be our Savior from sin.

**36. What does the Second Commandment tell us about ourselves?**

We discover that we have sinned when we do not use God's name according to His will.

**37. In what way did our Savior fulfill this commandment?**

**Bible passages:**

- 172) John 17:26 - "And I have declared to them Your name, and will declare it, that the love with which You loved Me may be in them, and I in them."
- 173) Luke 6:12 - . . . [Jesus] went out to the mountain to pray, and continued all night in prayer to God.
- 174) 1 Corinthians 11:24 - . . . and when He had given thanks . . .

Jesus always used God's name to the glory of His heavenly Father and to share the gifts of spiritual life and salvation with mankind everywhere.



**(God's Word)**

Remember the Sabbath day to keep it holy

***What does this mean?***

We should fear and love God that we do not despise His Word and the preaching of it; but we should regard God's Word as holy and gladly hear and learn it.

**38. What did God expect of His Old Testament people in connection with the Third Commandment?**

**Bible passages:**

- 175) Exodus 20:9-11 - "Six days you shall labor and do all your work, but the seventh day is the Sabbath of the LORD your God. In it you shall do no work: . . . For in six days the LORD made the heavens and the earth, the sea, and all that is in them, and rested the seventh day. Therefore the LORD blessed the Sabbath day and hallowed it."
- 176) Exodus 31:13 - "'Surely My Sabbaths you shall keep, for it is a sign between Me and you throughout your generations, that you may know that I am the LORD who sanctifies you.'"
- 177) Leviticus 23:3 - "'Six days shall work be done, but the seventh day is a Sabbath of solemn rest, a holy convocation.'"
- 178) Colossians 2:16,17 - Therefore let no one judge you in food or drink, or regarding a festival or a new moon or sabbaths, which are a shadow of things to come, but the substance is of Christ.

God expected His Old Testament people to set aside Saturday as a day of rest. He wanted them to use the day for worship, sacrifice, and learning about Him, His Son, their Savior, and the gift of eternal life. This was part of the ceremonial law. God has removed the requirement that His people have to worship on Saturday. Yet, He does want us to worship Him.

***Sabbath;*** means "rest." The Sabbath day is Saturday. It is the day the Lord "rested" after creating everything; that is, He ended His work.

In worship we hear about REST for our souls in Jesus Christ.

### 39. What does God expect of His people in the Third Commandment?

#### Bible narratives:

- 179) Luke 10:38-42 - Mary listened to Jesus as He told her about the one thing that is needed.
- 180) Acts 17:10,11 - The people of Berea used the Scriptures to see if the apostle Paul and Silas were telling the truth.

#### Bible passages:

- 181) Matthew 4:10 - "You shall worship the LORD, your God, and Him only you shall serve."
- 182) Colossians 3:16 - Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom, teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord.
- 183) 1 Thessalonians 2:13 - . . . when you received the word of God which you heard from us, you welcomed it not as the word of men, but as it is in truth, the word of God . . .
- 184) James 1:21 - . . . receive with meekness the implanted word, which is able to save your souls.

God wants us to regard the Bible as His Word and use it for study and worship to learn about His Son whom He sent to be the Savior of the world.

### 40. How do people despise the Word of God?

#### Bible passages:

- 185) John 8:47 - "He who is of God hears God's words; therefore you do not hear, because you are not of God."
- 186) Hebrews 10:25 - . . . not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as is the manner of some . . .
- 187) Luke 10:16 - "He who hears you hears Me, he who rejects you rejects Me, and he who rejects Me rejects Him who sent Me."
- 188) Ecclesiastes 5:1 - Walk prudently when you go to the house of God; and draw near to hear rather than to give the sacrifice of fools, for they do not know that they do evil.

- a. People despise God's Word when they do not listen to what He has to say.

*Despise:* have no respect for, dislike

**Bible passages:**

- 189) Matthew 13:22 - "Now he who received seed among the thorns is he who hears the word, and the cares of this world and the deceitfulness of riches choke the word, and he becomes unfruitful."
- 190) James 1:22-24 - But be doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving yourselves. For if anyone is a hearer of the word and not a doer, he is like a man observing his natural face in a mirror; for he observes himself, goes away, and immediately forgets what kind of man he was.
- 191) Hebrews 4:2 - For indeed the gospel was preached to us as well as to them; but the word which they heard did not profit them, not being mixed with faith in those who heard it.

- b. People also despise God's Word when they let the things of the world interfere with hearing it or when they do hear but do not believe what it says.

-----

**Bible passage:**

- 192) 1 John 1:7 - But if we walk in the light as He is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus Christ His Son cleanses us from all sin.
- 193) 1 Thessalonians 5:11 - Therefore comfort each other and edify one another, just as you also are doing.
- 194) Hebrews 10:25 - . . . not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as is the manner of some . . .
- c. People also despise God's Word when they withdraw from sharing worship with others and from using His Word to encourage and strengthen one another.

**41. How does God want us to think of His Word and use it?****Bible passages:**

- 195) Proverbs 30:5 - Every word of God is pure; He is a shield to those who put their trust in Him.
- 196) Luke 11:28 - " . . . blessed are those who hear the word of God and keep it!"
- 197) Psalm 122:1 - "I was glad when they said to me, 'Let us go into the house of the Lord.'"
- 198) Psalm 26:8 - LORD, I have loved the habitation of Your house, and the place where Your glory dwells.
- 199) Acts 2:42, - And they continued steadfastly in the apostles' doctrine and fellowship, in the breaking of bread, and in prayers.
- God wants us to gladly hear and learn His Word and gather around it in worship.



## **42. How do Christians in New Testament times usually worship?**

- a. SUNDAY. God has not commanded that we worship on any particular day of the week. Since the ascension of Christ, Christians have regularly used Sunday as a day for public worship. It is the day of the week on which Christ rose from the dead. Pentecost also fell on a Sunday that year.

Christians may use any day they wish for worship. Many congregations schedule worship for other days of the week besides Sunday (for example, Wednesday evening Advent or Lenten services, Good Friday, Ascension on a Thursday, and whatever days of the week Christmas Eve and Christmas fall).

It is important to remember **why** we worship. It is a privilege God gives His people to hear the Word of God - especially the Good News of forgiveness of sins through the death of Jesus Christ. Through this our faith is nourished and strengthened. Worship also gives us an opportunity to praise and thank God for the great things He has done for us, especially for that beautiful gift of salvation in Christ.

- b. THE CHURCH YEAR. We in the Lutheran Church follow a special pattern of worship in a year which emphasizes the important features of God's great plan of salvation. The church year is not the same as a calendar year. The church year begins four Sundays before Christmas and continues for 48 Sundays.

There are two main parts to the church year.

One part is called the FESTIVAL HALF.

The other is the NON-FESTIVAL HALF.

### **The Festival Half of the church includes these major "seasons":**

1. Advent (means "Coming") - a season of preparation for the coming of Christ into the world. Liturgical color: purple.
2. Christmas - December 25th. The festival of the Father, who sent His Son into the world to save people from their sins. Liturgical color: white.
3. Epiphany (means "Manifestation" or "Appearing") - January 6th and continuing for four to nine Sundays. Jesus showed people that He was the Son of God in what He did and said. Liturgical color: green.
4. Lent - Begins with Ash Wednesday and continues through Palm Sunday, and Good Friday. During Lent worshipers hear about the suffering and death of Jesus Christ for the sins of the world. Liturgical color: purple.

5. Easter - the festival of Jesus Christ. Resurrection - coming to life after being dead. The Ascension of Jesus comes 40 days after His resurrection from the dead. Liturgical color: white.
6. Pentecost - the festival of the Holy Spirit, His person and the nature of His work. Liturgical color: red.

**The Non-festival Half of the church year.**

The Non-festival half of the church has no set themes for its various Sundays. Some special worship themes very often occur during this "half" of the church year: Reformation Day (October 31), Fall Mission Festival (September or October), and Thanksgiving Day (the fourth Thursday in November).

**43. What do we learn about ourselves from the Third Commandment?**

The Third Commandment shows us that we have sinned when we do not gladly hear God's Word or use it faithfully.

**44. How did Jesus fulfill this commandment?**

**Bible narrative:**

200) Luke 4:16-30 - Jesus went to the synagogue (Jewish worship center) where He worshiped and taught the Word of God.

**Bible passage:**

201) John 17:8 - "For I have given to them the words which You have given Me . . ."

Jesus honored His Father's Word by gladly hearing it and preaching it.



## THE FOURTH COMMANDMENT



### *(God's Representatives)*

You shall honor your father and your mother  
that it may be well with you and you may live long on the earth.

#### *What does this mean?*

We should fear and love God that we do not despise nor anger  
our parents or superiors; but we should honor, serve, and obey  
them, and give them love and respect.

#### **45. Who are the people God expects us to honor?**

##### **Bible passage:**

202) Ephesians 6:1 - Children, obey your parents in the Lord, for  
this is right.

- a. First of all, they are our parents.

-----

##### **Bible passage:**

203) Hebrews 13:7 - Remember those who rule over you, who  
have spoken the word of God to you . . .

- b. God also expects us to honor our leaders in the church:  
pastors, teachers, elders, and any others serving in  
our congregation.

-----

##### **Bible passage:**

204) Romans 13:1 - Let every soul be subject to the governing  
authorities. For there is no authority except from God, and  
the authorities that exist are appointed by God.

- c. God wants us to submit ourselves to our leaders in  
government: president, governors, legislators, police,  
judges, and so on.

-----

##### **Bible passage:**

205) Colossians 3:22 - Servants, obey in all things your masters  
according to the flesh, not with eye-service, as men-pleasers,  
but in sincerity of heart, fearing God.

- d. God also wants us to obey our superiors at the place where  
we work: supervisors, bosses, owners, managers, and so forth.

#### 46. Why does God want us to honor our parents and superiors?

##### Bible passages:

- 206) Ephesians 6:1 - Children, obey your parents in the Lord, for this is right.
- 207) Acts 20:28 - "Therefore, take heed to yourselves and to all the flock, among which the Holy Spirit has made you overseers, to shepherd the church of God which He purchased with His own blood."
- 208) John 19:11 - Jesus answered [Pilate]: "You could have no power at all against Me unless it had been given you from above."
- 209) Romans 13:1,4 - The [governing] authorities that exist are appointed by God. . . . For he is God's minister . . .
- 210) Genesis 45:8 - [Joseph said], "[God] has made me a father to Pharaoh, and lord of all his house, and a ruler throughout all the land of Egypt."
- 211) Ephesians 6:5 - Servants, be obedient to those who are your masters according to the flesh, with fear and trembling, in sincerity of heart, as to Christ . . .

God wants us to honor our parents and superiors because they are His REPRESENTATIVES here on this earth through whom He gives us His blessings.

#### 47. How are parents to act as God's representatives?

##### Bible passages:

- 212) Deuteronomy 6:6,7 - "And these words which I command you today shall be in your heart; you shall teach them diligently to your children . . ."
- 213) Ephesians 6:4 - And you, fathers, do not provoke your children to wrath, but bring them up in the training and admonition of the Lord.

<i>Admonition:</i> Warning
----------------------------

God does not want parents to confuse and frustrate their children but to teach them God's Word and bring them up according to it.

#### 48. What are the blessings God gives through His representatives?

##### Bible passages:

- 214) Ephesians 6:2,3 - "Honor your father and mother," which is the first commandment with promise: "that it may be well with you and you may live long on the earth."
- 215) Ephesians 6:4 - And you, fathers, do not provoke your children to wrath, but bring them up in the training and admonition of the Lord.
- 216) 2 Timothy 1:5 - . . . when I call to remembrance the genuine faith that is in you, which dwelt first in your grandmother Lois and your mother Eunice, and I am persuaded is in you also.
  - a. Through our parents God gives us the blessings of shelter, food, clothing, love and concern, education and guidance for our life, and above all the Word of God from which we learn about our Savior from sin.

**Bible passage:**

217) Hebrews 13:17 - Obey those who rule over you, and be submissive, for they watch out for your souls, as those who must give account. Let them do so with joy and not with grief, for that would be unprofitable for you.

- b. God's representatives in the church bring us the Word of God, especially the saving Gospel of forgiveness of sins in Jesus Christ.

-----

**Bible passage:**

218) Romans 13:3,4 - For rulers are not a terror to good works, but to evil . . . For [the governing authority] is God's minister to you for good. But if you do evil, be afraid; for he does not bear the sword in vain; for he is God's minister, an avenger to execute wrath on him who practices evil.

- c. Through His representatives in government God blesses us with peace, protection, public services, and law and order.

-----

**Bible passage:**

219) Ephesians 6:5,7,8 - Servants, be obedient to those who are your masters according to the flesh . . . with good will doing service as to the Lord, and not to men, knowing that whatever good anyone does, he will receive the same from the Lord, whether he is a slave or free.

- d. God's representatives at the place where we work provide the blessing of order so that we can earn a living with as little trouble as possible.

#### **49. What does God forbid in this commandment?**

##### **Bible narratives:**

- 220) 1 Samuel 2:22-25 - The sons of Eli did not obey their father.
- 221) 2 Samuel 15:1-12;18:14-17 - David's son Absalom rebelled against his father in an attempt to take away his father's kingdom.

##### **Bible passages:**

- 222) Proverbs 30:11,17 - There is a generation that curses its father, and does not bless its mother. . . . The eye that mocks his father, and scorns obedience to his mother, the ravens of the valley will pick it out, and the young eagles will eat it.
- 223) Romans 13:2 - Therefore whoever resists the authority resists the ordinance of God, and those who resist will bring judgment on themselves.

God does not want us to disobey, defy, make fun of, anger, or show any disrespect for our parents and superiors.

#### **50. How does God want us to treat our parents and superiors?**

##### **Bible narratives:**

- 224) Genesis 39:1-6 - Joseph served well for his master Potiphar.
- 225) 1 Samuel 3 - Samuel obeyed the priest, Eli.
- 226) 1 Samuel 24:1-7 - David refused to harm king Saul, even though Saul was trying to kill him.
- 227) Genesis 45 - Joseph took care of his father in Egypt.

##### **Bible passages:**

- 228) 1 Timothy 5:4 - But if any widow has children or grandchildren, let them first learn to show piety at home and to repay their parents; for this is good and acceptable before God.
- 229) Proverbs 23:22 - Listen to your father who begot you, and do not despise your mother when she is old.
- 230) Leviticus 19:32 - "You shall rise before the gray headed and honor the presence of an old man . . ."

- 231) 1 Thessalonians 5:12,13 - And we urge you, brethren, to recognize those who labor among you, and are over you in the Lord and admonish you, and to esteem them very highly in love for their work's sake.
- 232) Romans 13:7 - Render therefore to all their due: taxes to whom taxes are due, customs to whom customs, fear to whom fear, honor to whom honor.
- 233) Romans 13:8 - Owe no one anything except to love one another . . .

**Esteem:** to admire, have a high regard for, respect

God wants us to honor our parents and superiors, obey them, and show them love and respect.

### **51. What are God's representatives to do if someone is disobedient and disrespectful?**

#### **Bible passages:**

- 234) Proverbs 13:24 - He who spares his rod hates his son, but he who loves him disciplines him promptly.
- 235) Hebrews 12:6 - For whom the LORD loves He chastens . . .
- 236) Hebrews 12:11 - Now no chastening (discipline) seems to be joyful for the present, but grievous; nevertheless, afterward it yields the peaceable fruit of righteousness to those who have been trained by it.
- 237) 2 Timothy 4:2 - Preach the word! Be ready in season and out of season. Convince, rebuke, exhort, with all longsuffering and teaching.
- 238) Romans 13:4 - . . . for [the governing authority] does not bear the sword in vain; for he is God's minister, an avenger to execute wrath on him who practices evil.

God wants our parents and superiors to discipline us, including correcting us when we are wrong or have been disobedient or disrespectful.

**Discipline:** To train by approving what we do right and by disapproving and punishing when we are doing what is wrong

**52. Is there ever a time when we might have to disobey our parents or superiors?**

**Bible passages:**

239) Acts 5:29 - "We ought to obey God rather than men."

240) Matthew 10:37 - "He who loves father or mother more than Me is not worthy of Me. And he who loves son or daughter more than Me is not worthy of Me."

God does not ever want us to do something contrary to what He has told us in His Word, even if our parents or superiors have told us to do it.

**53. What do we learn about ourselves from this commandment?**

We discover that we sin against God when we do not honor, serve, and obey our parents and superiors as His representatives.

**54. How did Jesus fulfill this commandment?**

**Bible narratives:**

241) Luke 2:41-52 - Jesus returned to Nazareth with His father and mother and "was subject to them . . ."

242) John 19:25-27 - While He was on the cross, Jesus arranged for the care of His mother.

243) Matthew 22:19-21 - Jesus advised His people to honor and respect government.

**Bible passage:**

244) Philippians 2:8 - [Christ] became obedient to the point of death, even the death of the cross.

During His lifetime, Jesus honored His parents and superiors as God's representatives. His self-sacrifice to save human beings from their sins was an act of obedience to His heavenly Father.





***(Our Own and Our Neighbor's Body)***

You shall not murder.

***What does this mean?***

We should fear and love God that we do not hurt nor harm our neighbor's body; but we should help and be a friend to him in every bodily need.

**55. What does God protect in the Fifth Commandment?**

**Bible passages:**

- 245) Genesis 2:7 - And the LORD God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living being.
- 246) Acts 17:25 - "Nor is [God] worshiped with men's hands, as though He needed anything, since He gives to all life, breath, and all things."

God protects human life in this commandment.

**56. Why does God protect human life?**

**Bible narrative:**

- 247) Luke 16:19-31 - In the story about the rich man and Lazarus Jesus shows that people are to use God's Word for their spiritual benefit during their lifetime on earth.

**Bible passages:**

- 248) Isaiah 55:6 - Seek the LORD while He may be found, call upon Him while He is near.
- 249) 2 Corinthians 6:2 - Behold, now is the accepted time; behold, now is the day of salvation.
- 250) Genesis 9:6 - "Whoever sheds man's blood, by man his blood shall be shed; for in the image of God He made man."

***Time of grace:*** the period of a person's life on this earth during which God brings them His Word, especially the Gospel

God protects human life, because He does not want anyone to shorten another person's time of grace.

## **57. Whose life is God protecting?**

### **Bible narrative:**

251) Luke 10:29-37 - In telling about the "Good Samaritan" Jesus shows to whom we can be a neighbor.

### **Bible passages:**

252) Matthew 22:39 - You shall love your neighbor as yourself.

253) Matthew 5:44 - But I say to you, love your enemies, bless those who curse you, do good to those who hate you, and pray for those who spitefully use you and persecute you.

254) 1 John 3:16 - By this we know love, because He laid down His life for us. And we also ought to lay down our lives for the brethren.

255) John 15:13 - Greater love has no one than this, than to lay down one's life for his friends.

God protects our own and our neighbor's life.

## **58. Who alone has the right to take a life?**

### **Bible passages:**

256) Deuteronomy 32:39 - "Now see that I, even I, am He, and there is no God besides Me; I kill and I make alive . . ."

257) Psalm 31:15 - My times are in Your hand . . .

258) Genesis 9:6 - "Whoever sheds man's blood, by man his blood shall be shed; for in the image of God He made man."

259) Romans 13:4 - For [the governing authority] is God's minister to you for good. But if you do evil, be afraid; for he does not bear the sword in vain; for he is God's minister, an avenger to execute wrath on him who practices evil.

God tells us that the days of our lives are in His hand. Only He - and His representatives in government - have the right to end someone's life.

Capital punishment: the government ends the life of a person who commits a serious crime (usually murder). It also is called an execution.

## 59. What does God forbid in this commandment?

### Bible passage:

- 260) Proverbs 23:20,31,33 - Do not mix with winebibbers, or with gluttonous eaters of meat (people who eat too much) . . . Do not look on the wine when it is red, when it sparkles in the cup, when it swirls around smoothly . . . Your eyes will see strange things, and your heart will utter perverse things.
- 261) Galatians 5:19,21 Now the works of the flesh are evident. . . drunkenness . . .
- 262) Philippians 4:6 - Be anxious for nothing . . .
- 263) Acts 16:28 - "Do yourself no harm . . ."

- a. God does not want us to harm our own bodies by overeating, by abusing them in drinking too much alcohol or misusing other drugs, by worrying or by any other harmful activity.

People also harm their own bodies when they don't get enough exercise or when they take unreasonable risks.

-----

### Bible narratives:

- 264) 1 Samuel 31:4 - Saul committed suicide.
- 265) Matthew 27:5 - Judas committed suicide.

### Bible passage:

- 266) Deuteronomy 32:39 - "I kill and I make alive . . ."
- b. God does not want people to end their own lives - suicide.

-----

### Bible narratives:

- 267) Genesis 4:2-15 - Cain murdered his brother Abel.
- 268) 2 Samuel 11:2-17 - David murdered Uriah with the help of others.
- 269) Exodus 21:29 - God does not want people to lose their lives because of our carelessness.

### Bible passages:

- 270) Galatians 5:19,21 - Now the works of the flesh are evident . . . murders . . .
- 271) Matthew 15:19 - For out of the heart proceed evil thoughts, murders, adulteries, fornications, thefts, false witnesses, blasphemies.

c. God does not want us to end another person's life - murder.

**Bible narratives:**

- 272) Genesis 37:11-35 - Joseph's brothers made life miserable for him and his father.
- 273) Exodus 21:18-27 - God did not want His people hurting anyone.

**Bible passages:**

- 274) Romans 12:19,21 - Beloved, do not avenge yourselves, but rather give place to wrath; for it is written, "Vengeance is Mine, I will repay," says the Lord . . . Do not be overcome by evil, but overcome evil with good.

d. God does not want us to hurt or harm our neighbor in any way by what we say or what we do.

-----  
**Bible passages:**

- 275) 1 John 3:15 - Whoever hates his brother is a murderer, and you know that no murderer has eternal life abiding in him.
- 276) Matthew 5:22 - But I say to you that whoever is angry with his brother without a cause shall be in danger of the judgment.

e. God does not even want us to hate anyone.

**60. What does God require of us in this commandment?**

**Bible narratives:**

- 277) Genesis 14:12-16 - Abraham rescued his nephew Lot.
- 278) Luke 10:25-37 - The "Good Samaritan" took care of the bodily needs of the man who was robbed and beaten.
- 279) Genesis 50:15-21 - Joseph forgave his brothers for all the bodily injury and everything else they did to him.

**Bible passages:**

- 280) Romans 12:20 - "Therefore if your enemy hungers, feed him; if he thirsts, give him a drink; for in so doing you will heap coals of fire on his head."
- 281) 1 John 4:20 - If someone says, "I love God," and hates his brother, he is a liar; for he who does not love his brother whom he has seen, how can he love God whom he has not seen?
- 282) Ephesians 4:32 - And be kind to one another, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, just as God for Christ's sake also forgave you.

**Abortion:** murder of an unborn baby

**Mercy death:** ending the life of a person who is terminally ill - also called "euthanasia"

**Lynching:** ending a person's life by taking the law into one's own hands

**Assassination:** violent murder of a prominent person or a government official for political reasons

**Homicide:** another word for murder; "-cide" at the end of a word means "kill." (Patricide, genocide, fratricide, etc...)

283) Proverbs 24:17 - Do not rejoice when your enemy falls, and do not let your heart be glad when he stumbles . . .

God wants us to love everyone, even our enemies. He tells us to forgive other people when we've been hurt by them. He expects us to help and be a friend to others in every bodily need.

## **61. What do we learn about ourselves in connection with this commandment?**

From the Fifth Commandment we discover that we have sinned by not accepting responsibility for our own well-being and for the bodily welfare of others but have instead hurt and harmed them in what we have said and done.

## **62. How did Jesus fulfill this commandment?**

### **Bible narrative:**

284) John 6:1-14 - Jesus showed His compassion and fed the 5000.

### **Bible passages:**

285) Mark 7:37 - And they were astonished beyond measure, saying, "He has done all things well. He makes both the deaf to hear and the mute to speak."

286) 1 John 4:10,11 - In this is love, not that we loved God, but that He loved us and sent His Son to be the propitiation for our sins. Beloved, if God so loved us, we also ought to love one another.

287) 1 Peter 2:22,23 - "Who committed no sin, nor was guile found in His mouth"; who, when He was reviled, did not revile in return; when He suffered, He did not threaten, but committed Himself to Him who judges righteously.

Jesus not only helped people in their bodily need, He also gave His own body into death for the forgiveness of sins.



***(Our Own and Our Neighbor's Spouse)***

You shall not commit adultery.

***What does this mean?***

We should fear and love God that we live a pure and decent life in words and actions, and that husband and wife love and honor one another.

**63. What does God protect in this commandment?**

**Bible passages:**

288) Genesis 2:18 - And the LORD God said, "It is not good that man should be alone; I will make him a helper comparable to him."

*Spouse:* marriage partner

289) Genesis 2:24 - Therefore a man shall leave his father and mother and be joined to his wife, and they shall become one flesh.

290) Hebrews 13:4 - Marriage is honorable among all, and the bed undefiled; but fornicators and adulterers God will judge.

In the Sixth Commandment God is protecting MARRIAGE.

**64. What is marriage?**

**Bible passages:**

291) Matthew 19:5,6 - "'For this reason a man shall leave his father and mother and be joined to his wife, and the two shall become one flesh.' So then, they are no longer two but one flesh. Therefore what God has joined together, let not man separate."

Marriage is the union of a man and a woman rightfully living together as husband and wife.

*Rightfully:* the way God intends marriage to be

**65. When did God establish marriage?**

**Bible narrative:**

292) Genesis 2:18-25 - God made Eve from a rib of Adam and brought her to him.

God established marriage in the Garden of Eden when He made Eve for Adam.

## 66. How does God regulate marriage?

### Bible narrative:

293) Matthew 19:4-9 - Jesus describes what marriage is.

### Bible passage:

294) Romans 7:2,3 - For the woman who has a husband is bound by the law to her husband as long as he lives. But if the husband dies, she is released from the law of her husband.

295) Matthew 19:6 - "Therefore what God has joined together, let not man separate."

God regulates marriage by requiring that it be a life-long union of one man and one woman, who live together as husband and wife according to His plan for married people.

## 67. How does God bless marriage?

### Bible passage:

296) Genesis 2:18 - And the LORD God said, "It is not good that man should be alone; I will make him a helper comparable to him."

- a. God blesses marriage by providing COMPANIONSHIP for husband and wife.

-----

### Bible narratives:

297) Song of Solomon - The entire book of Song of Solomon describes the love of a husband and wife.

298) 1 Corinthians 7:2-5 - God provides for a husband's and wife's sexual happiness in marriage.

### Bible passages:

299) Genesis 2:24 - . . . and they shall become one flesh.

300) 1 Corinthians 7:2 - Nevertheless, because of sexual immorality, let each man have his own wife, and let each woman have her own husband.

- b. God blesses marriage by giving a husband and wife sexual happiness. CHASTITY.

<p><i>Chastity:</i> moral cleanness, especially in connection with sexual matters</p>
---

### **Bible passages:**

- 301) Psalm 127:3 - Behold, children are a heritage from the LORD, the fruit of the womb is His reward.
- 302) Psalm 128:3 - Your wife shall be like a fruitful vine in the very heart of your house, your children like olive plants all around your table.
- 303) Genesis 1:28 - Then God blessed them, and God said to them, "Be fruitful and multiply; fill the earth and subdue it . . ."

c. God blesses marriage with the gift of CHILDREN.

### **68. What should people do who are seeking to be married?**

1) **BECOME ENGAGED.** Engagement to be married is the promise a man and a woman make to each other to live together as husband and wife. There is usually a period of time between an engagement and the wedding. The two individuals involved should not think of this as a time to reconsider whether or not they should be married. It is not a time to test their commitment to one another. The commitment is made at the time of the engagement. They should be using the time after the engagement to make the necessary plans for their wedding.

An engaged couple are not yet married and therefore are not permitted to live together or have sex as if they were husband and wife. Breaking an engagement involves breaking a solemn promise. A Christian should not make such a promise if he or she doesn't plan to keep it. (See Ephesians 4:25.) Breaking an engagement affects the deep feelings and plans of another individual - one who had made a life-long commitment.

2) **ASK THEIR PARENTS' BLESSING.** God expects His children to honor their fathers and mothers. A Christian man and woman seeking to be married will seek the advice and counsel of their parents.

3) **COMPLETE THE LEGAL REQUIREMENTS.** We grant to the government the right to regulate marriage in our society. The government at this time does not require us to do anything which is contrary to the Scriptures in connection with marriage. A Christian couple will fulfill the legal requirements for marriage by getting a license and a blood test (if necessary).

4) **PLAN THEIR WEDDING.** Very often a Christian couple wants others to share the happiness of their being married and to ask God's blessing on their union. If they wish a church wedding, they will need to contact their pastor to make the necessary plans. Quite often a pastor will give PRE-MARITAL COUNSELING to the couple.



## 69. How will a husband and a wife treat one another?

### Bible narrative:

304) 1 Peter 3:1-7 - The apostle tells how husbands and wives are to love and honor one another.

### Bible passage:

305) Ephesians 5:21-28 - . . . submitting to one another in the fear of God. Wives, submit to your own husbands, as to the Lord. For the husband is head of the wife, as also Christ is head of the church . . . Husbands, love your wives, just as Christ also loved the church and gave himself for it . . . So husbands ought to love their own wives . . .

God tells of a mutual submission in the relationship of a husband and wife. For wives it is a submission of trust, as each honors her husband as her God-given head. For husbands it is a submission of love, as each is willing to sacrifice life itself for the benefit of his wife. The love of Christ is the model.

## 70. How do people sin against this commandment?

### Bible passages:

- 306) Ephesians 5:3,5 - But fornication and all uncleanness or covetousness, let it not even be named among you, as is fitting for saints . . . For this you know, that no fornicator, unclean person, nor covetous man, who is an idolater, has any inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and God.
- 307) Matthew 5:28 - "But I say to you that whoever looks at a woman to lust for her has already committed adultery with her in his heart."

**Fornication:** sexual sins - often used of sex sins committed by those unmarried

- a. People sin when any of their thoughts, words, and actions are sexually unclean.

-----

### Bible narrative:

308) 2 Samuel 11 - King David committed adultery with Uriah's wife, Bathsheba.

### Bible passages:

- 309) Deuteronomy 5:18 - "You shall not commit adultery."  
310) Hebrews 13:4 - Marriage is honorable among all, and the bed undefiled; but fornicators and adulterers God will judge.

**Adultery:** sexual sins, especially of the married

- b. People who are married sin when they have sexual intercourse with any one other than their marriage partner.

-----

**Bible narrative:**

311) Genesis 39:1-23 - Joseph refused the sexual advances of Potiphar’s wife.

**Bible passages:**

312) Genesis 39:9 - “How then can I do this great wickedness and sin against God?”

313) 1 Thessalonians 4:3 - For this is the will of God, your sanctification: that you should abstain from sexual immorality . . .

c. People who are not married sin by having sexual intercourse with anyone.

-----

**Bible passages:**

314) Matthew 19:9 - “And I say to you, whoever divorces his wife, except for sexual immorality, and marries another, commits adultery . . .”

315) 1 Corinthians 7:15 - But if the unbeliever departs, let him depart; a brother or a sister is not under bondage in such cases.

d. People who are married sin against God if they get a divorce for any reason other than fornication (adultery) or desertion.

-----

**Bible narratives:**

316) 1 Corinthians 6,9,10 - The apostle Paul describes different types of sinners including those who commit adultery or are homosexual.

317) Romans 1:26,27 - The apostle Paul tells of God’s judgment against unbelieving sinners, including a punishment of homosexuality.

318) Ephesians 5:3-5 - People who commit sex sins are listed among those who do not have an inheritance in the kingdom of Christ.

e. People sin against this commandment when they commit other sexual sins:

Prostitution: selling sex

Homosexuality or lesbianism: sex between members of the same sex

Rape: forced sex against another’s will

Incest: sex with a close relative other than one’s spouse

Pornography: books, movies, videos, and pictures which show or describe sexually sinful acts

Lust: often in Scripture, a sinful desire for sex

Dirty jokes

Public nudity

**Desertion:** one marriage partner leaves the marriage and does not intend to return. Sometimes this is called "malicious desertion."

## **71. What does God expect of us?**

### **Bible passages:**

- 319) Psalm 51:10 - Create in me a clean heart, O God, and renew a steadfast spirit within me.
- 320) Proverbs 1:10 - My son, if sinners entice you, do not consent.
- 321) 2 Timothy 2:22 - Flee also youthful lusts; but pursue righteousness, faith, love, peace with those who call on the Lord out of a pure heart.

God expects us to have a pure, clean heart so that we do not fall into any sexual temptation and sin. We ask God to give us such a heart.

## **72. What do we learn about ourselves in this commandment?**

We learn that we have sinned whenever our thoughts, words, or actions have been sexually impure and unclean.

## **73. How did Jesus fulfill this commandment for us?**

### **Bible passages:**

- 322) Hebrews 7:26 - For such a High Priest was fitting for us, who is holy, harmless, undefiled, separate from sinners . . .
- 323) 1 John 1:7 - . . . and the blood of Jesus Christ His Son cleanses us from all sin.

Jesus fulfilled this commandment for us by keeping Himself pure and clean. He also died for us for the forgiveness of our sins.



***(Our Own and Our Neighbor's Property)***

You shall not steal.

***What does this mean?***

We should fear and love God that we do not take our neighbor's money or possessions, nor get them in a dishonest way; but we should help him to improve and protect his property and way of making a living.

**74. What does God protect in this commandment?**

In this commandment God protects our own and our neighbor's property.

**75. From whom does our property come?**

**Bible passages:**

- 324) Psalm 24:1 - The earth is the Lord's and all its fulness (everything in it) . . .
  - 325) Job 1:21 - "The LORD gave, and the LORD has taken away; blessed be the name of the LORD."
  - 326) Proverbs 22:2 - The rich and poor have this in common, the LORD is maker of them all.
- All our property comes from God. He is the owner. We are simply stewards (caretakers).

*Property: possessions, everything we own*

**76. How does God give us our property?**

**Bible Narrative:**

- 327) Genesis 23 - Abraham purchased the cave of Machpelah as burial place.

**Bible passages:**

- 328) Deuteronomy 8:18 - And you shall remember the LORD your God, for it is He who gives you power to get wealth . . .
  - 329) Psalm 128:2 - When you eat the labor of your hands, you shall be happy, and it shall be well with you.
  - 330) 2 Thessalonians 3:10 - If anyone will not work, neither shall he eat.
- a. God gives us our property by giving us the ability to WORK and earn money. We then can use the money we earn to BUY things.

**Bible narratives:**

- 331) Matthew 2:1-12 - The wise men gave gifts to the recently born Jesus.
- 332) 1 Kings 21:1-16 - Naboth received a vineyard through an inheritance.

b. God gives us our property through GIFTS and INHERITANCE.

**77. How does God want us to use our money and property?**

God wants us to be good caretakers (stewards) of the property and money He has given us. This includes a careful use of our time and the talents and abilities which He has given. He does not want us to waste any of these.

**Bible passages:**

- 333) Galatians 6:6 - Let him who is taught the word share in all good things with him who teaches.
- 334) 2 Corinthians 9:7 - So let each one give as he purposes in his heart, not grudgingly or of necessity; for God loves a cheerful giver.
- 335) 1 Corinthians 16:2 - On the first day of the week let each one of you lay something aside, storing up as he may prosper, that there be no collections when I come.

a. God wants us to use the firstfruits of our money and property to make regular, generous offerings to Him through the CHURCH to support the preaching of the gospel.

-----  
**Bible passage:**

- 336) 1 Timothy 5:8 - But if anyone does not provide for his own, and especially those of his household, he has denied the faith and is worse than an unbeliever.

b. God wants us to use our money and property to provide for OURSELVES and our FAMILY.

-----  
**Bible passage:**

- 337) 1 John 3:17 - But whoever has this world's goods, and sees his brother in need, and shuts up his heart from him, how does the love of God abide in him?

c. God wants us to use our money and property to help OTHERS IN NEED.

**Bible passages:**

- 338) Matthew 22:21 - "Render therefore to Caesar the things that are Caesar's, and to God the things that are God's."
- 339) Romans 13:6,7 - For because of this you also pay taxes, for they are God's ministers . . . Render therefore to all their due: taxes to whom taxes are due, customs to whom customs . . .
- d. God wants us to use our money and property to support our government by paying TAXES.

**78. What does God forbid in this commandment?**

**Bible passages:**

- 340) Ephesians 4:28 - Let him who stole steal no longer, but rather let him labor, working with his hands what is good, that he may have something to give to him who has need.
- 341) Psalm 37:21 - The wicked borrows and does not repay . . .
- 342) James 5:4 - Indeed the wages of the laborers who mowed your fields, which you kept back by fraud, cry out . . .
- 343) Leviticus 19:35 - You shall do no injustice in judgment, in measurement of length, weight, or volume.
  - a. God forbids stealing - taking money or property which is not ours.

-----

**Bible passage:**

- 344) 1 Timothy 6:9,10 - But those who desire to be rich fall into temptation and a snare, and into many foolish and harmful lusts which drown men in destruction and perdition. For the love of money is a root of all kinds of evil, for which some have strayed from the faith in their greediness, and pierced themselves through with many sorrows.
  - b. God also does not want us to have a sinful desire for more than He has given us.

There are many names for stealing and ways people steal:

- robbery
- theft
- fraud
- larceny
- vandalism
- embezzlement
- forgery
- blackmail
- kidnaping
- cheating (on a test)
- pickpocket
- shoplifting
- rustling
- poaching
- mugging
- espionage
- looting
- pirating
- counterfeiting
- extorting
- hijacking
- skyjacking
- arson
- plagiarism
- usury
- goldbricking
- defaulting on a loan

## **79. How does God want us to regard the gifts He's given us?**

### **Bible passages:**

345) 1 Timothy 6:6-8 - But godliness with contentment is great gain. For we brought nothing into this world, and it is certain we can carry nothing out. And having food and clothing, with these we shall be content.

- a. God wants us to be content with the things He has given us and the way of life we have from Him.

### **Bible passage:**

346) Psalm 103:1,2 - Bless the LORD, O my soul; and all that is within me, bless His holy name! Bless the LORD, O my soul, and forget not all His benefits.

- b. God wants us to thank Him for the gifts He has given us.

## **80. How does God want us to protect our neighbor's money and property?**

### **Bible passage:**

347) Ephesians 6:9 - And you, masters, do the same things to them, giving up threatening, knowing that your own Master also is in heaven, and there is no partiality with Him.

- a. God wants us to be good employers and supervisors.

-----

### **Bible passage:**

348) Colossians 3:22,23 - Servants, obey in all things your masters according to the flesh, not with eyeservice, as men-pleasers, but in sincerity of heart, fearing God. And whatever you do, do it heartily, as to the Lord and not to men.

- b. God wants us to be good workers.

-----

### **Bible narrative:**

349) Genesis 41:33-40 - Joseph gave Pharaoh good advice regarding the famine which was going to come to Egypt.

- c. God wants our advice to be for the benefit of our neighbor.

## **81. What do we learn about ourselves from this commandment?**

We learn that we sin against God when we regard the things of this world too highly, when we are not content, when we take what is not ours, or when we do not seek to improve and protect our neighbor's property and way of making a living.

## **82. How did Jesus fulfill this commandment for us?**

### **Bible passages:**

- 350) Matthew 6:20,21 - " . . . but lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven . . . For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also."
- 351) Luke 12:15 - " . . . for one's life does not consist in the abundance of the things he possesses."
- 352) 2 Corinthians 8:9 - For you know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, that though He was rich, yet for your sakes He became poor, that you through His poverty might become rich.

Jesus taught us about the greatest treasure of all: forgiveness of sins. He chose to give up His riches as God to come to earth and sacrifice Himself for our sins, in order that we might have heavenly riches.





## THE EIGHTH COMMANDMENT



### ***(Our Own and Our Neighbor's Good Name)***

You shall not bear false witness against your neighbor.

#### ***What does this mean?***

We should fear and love God that we do not tell lies about our neighbor, betray him, or say anything that might ruin his good name and reputation; but we should defend him, speak well of him, and explain all his words and actions in the best possible way.

### **83. What does God protect in this commandment?**

#### **Bible passages:**

- 353) Proverbs 22:1 - A good name is to be chosen rather than great riches . . .
- 354) Ecclesiastes 7:1 - A good name is better than precious ointment . . .

***Reputation:*** what other people think and say about an individual

In this commandment God is protecting our own and our neighbor's good name and reputation.

### **84. What is false witness?**

#### **Bible passage:**

- 355) Zechariah 8:17 - Let none of you think evil in your heart against your neighbor.
- False witness is all talk about our neighbor which comes out of a non-loving heart.

### **85. How do people bear false witness?**

#### **Bible narrative:**

- 356) Matthew 26:59-61 - The Jewish court tried to get people to lie about Jesus in court.

#### **Bible passages:**

- 357) Proverbs 19:5 - A false witness will not go unpunished, and he who speaks lies will not escape.
- 358) Colossians 3:9 - Do not lie to one another . . .
- 359) Ephesians 4:25 - Therefore, putting away lying, each one speak truth with his neighbor . . .
  - a. God does not want us to tell lies about our neighbor in court or in daily life.

**Bible narrative:**

360) Matthew 26:14-16 - Judas agreed to betray Jesus by telling His enemies where He was.

**Bible passages:**

361) Proverbs 11:13 - A tale bearer reveals secrets, but he who is of a faithful spirit conceals the matter.

362) Proverbs 25:9 - . . . And do not disclose the secret to another . . .

b. God does not want us to betray our neighbor by telling secrets, gossiping, or being a tattletale.

-----

**Bible narrative:**

363) 2 Samuel 15:1-6 - David's son Absalom spoke in a way which ruined the good name of his father.

**Bible passages:**

364) James 4:11 - Do not speak evil of one another, brethren.

365) Psalm 50:19,20 - You give your mouth to evil, and your tongue frames deceit. You sit and speak against your brother; you slander your own mother's son.

c. God does not want us to slander or defame our neighbor by saying anything that would ruin his good name and reputation.

**86. What does God want us to do in the Eighth Commandment?**

**Bible narratives:**

366) 1 Samuel 20:30-32 - Jonathan spoke well of David to his father Saul.

367) Luke 7:1-5 - The people of Capernaum spoke well of the centurion.

**Bible passages:**

368) Ephesians 4:15 - . . . speaking the truth in love . . .

369) Proverbs 31:8,9 - Open your mouth for the speechless, in the cause of all who are appointed to die. Open your mouth, judge righteously, and plead the cause of the poor and needy.

370) Proverbs 10:12 - Hatred stirs up strife, but love covers all sins.  
(see also 1 Peter 4:8)

371) 1 Corinthians 13:5-7 - Love . . . does not behave rudely, does not seek its own, is not provoked, thinks no evil; does not rejoice in iniquity, but rejoices in the truth; bears all things, believes all things, hopes all things, endures all things.

God leads us to speak well of our neighbor, defend his good name, and explain all of his actions in the best possible way.

## 87. What should we do if we see a person sin?

### Bible narratives:

- 372) 2 Samuel 12:1-14 - The prophet Nathan was sent to David to lead him to repent of his sin.
- 373) Matthew 18:15-18 - Jesus tells of a procedure He wants us to follow if our brother sins against us.

### Bible passages:

- 374) Matthew 18:15 - "Moreover if your brother sins against you, go and tell him his fault between you and him alone. If he hears you, you have gained your brother."
- 375) Luke 17:3 - "If your brother sins against you, rebuke him; and if he repents, forgive him."

God wants us to go to the person who has sinned in order to lead him to be sorry for it and believe in Jesus for forgiveness.

*Repentance:* the change which involves sorrow for sins, faith in Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of sins, and turning away from sin.

## 88. What do we learn about ourselves in the Eighth Commandment?

In the Eighth Commandment we learn that we have sinned when we tell lies about our neighbor, ruin his good name, or with evil intent tell the truth to damage his reputation.

## 89. How did Jesus fulfill this commandment for us?

### Bible passage:

- 376) 1 Peter 2:22-24 - "[Christ] committed no sin, nor was guile found in His mouth:" who, when He was reviled, did not revile in return; when He suffered, He did not threaten, but committed Himself to Him who judges righteously; who Himself bore our sins in His own body on the tree, that we, having died to sins, might live for righteousness - by whose stripes you were healed.

Jesus not only was careful in what He said about people, He also died to take away the sins of the whole world.

## THE NINTH COMMANDMENT



You shall not covet your neighbor's house.

### *What does this mean?*

We should fear and love God that we do not sinfully desire to get our neighbor's inheritance or house by a trick or in a way that appears to be right; but we should do everything we can to help him keep what is his.

## THE TENTH COMMANDMENT



You shall not covet your neighbor's wife, nor his workers, nor his animals, nor anything that is your neighbor's.

### *What does this mean?*

We should fear and love God that we do not sinfully desire to use tricks or force, or do anything that might cause our neighbor to lose his wife, workers, or animals; but we should urge them to stay and do their duty.

### **90. What is God impressing on us in these two commandments?**

God shows us in these two commandments that it is possible to sin by what we think and desire.

### **91. What is coveting?**

#### **Bible narrative:**

377) 1 Kings 21:1-16 - Ahab coveted Naboth's vineyard.

#### **Bible passages:**

378) 1 Timothy 6:10 - For the love of money is a root of all kinds of evil, for which some have strayed from the faith in their greediness, and pierced themselves through with many sorrows.

379) Romans 7:7,8 - For I would not have known covetousness unless the law had said, "You shall not covet." But sin, taking opportunity by the commandment, produced in me all manner of evil desire.

380) James 1:14,15 - But each one is tempted when he is drawn away by his own desires and enticed. Then, when desire has conceived, it gives birth to sin; and sin, when it is full-grown, brings forth death.

Coveting is sinful desire. Coveting is being consumed with wanting something you can't have or would have to sin to get. Lust and greed are types of coveting.

Symptoms of coveting: pouting, jealousy, envy, worry, anxiety, dissatisfaction, and discontent.

## **92. What is the difference between the Ninth and Tenth Commandments?**

In the Ninth Commandment God forbids coveting our neighbor's non-living things. The Tenth Commandment speaks of living things - people and animals.

## **93. What does God expect of us in these commandments?**

### **Bible passages:**

381) Leviticus 19:2 - "You shall be holy, for I the LORD your God am holy."

382) Psalm 51:10 - Create in me a clean heart, O God, and renew a steadfast spirit within me.

a. God wants us to have only holy desires.

### **Bible passages:**

383) Hebrews 13:5 - Let your conduct be without covetousness, and be content with such things as you have.

384) 1 Timothy 6:6,8 - But godliness with contentment is great gain . . . And having food and clothing, with these we shall be content.

b. God wants us to be content with what He has given us.

## **94. What will these holy desires move us to do?**

### **Bible narrative:**

385) Philemon - The apostle Paul urged the slave Onesimus to return to his master.

### **Bible passages:**

386) Galatians 5:13 - . . . but through love serve one another.

387) Philippians 2:4 - Let each of you look out not only for his own interests, but also for the interests of others.

388) Ephesians 4:22-24 - . . . that you put off, concerning your former conduct, the old man which grows corrupt according to the deceitful lusts, and be renewed in the spirit of your mind, and that you put on the new man which was created according to God, in righteousness and true holiness.

With the holy desires the Holy Spirit gives us, we can in love help our neighbor keep what is his.

## 95. What do we learn from these commandments about ourselves?

We learn from these commandments that we have sinned when we have evil desires which could cause us to take what is our neighbor's.

## 96. How has Jesus fulfilled these commandments?

### Bible passage:

389) Ephesians 5:25-27 - . . . just as Christ also loved the church and gave Himself for it, that He might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word, that He might present it to Himself a glorious church, not having spot or wrinkle or any such thing, but that it should be holy and without blemish.

390) 1 Peter 4:1,2 - Therefore, since Christ suffered for us in the flesh, arm yourselves also with the same mind, for he who has suffered in the flesh has ceased from sin, that he no longer should live the rest of his time in the flesh for the lusts of men, but for the will of God.

Through His death Jesus has secured forgiveness for all our sins and sent His spirit to make us a people who have pure, holy desires.

## SIN AND ORIGINAL SIN



## 97. What is sin?

### Bible passages:

391) 1 John 3:4 - Whoever commits sin also commits lawlessness, and sin is lawlessness.

392) Romans 3:20 - . . .for by the law is the knowledge of sin.

Sin is breaking God's law.

### Words for sin in the Bible are:

Sin - literally means missing the mark;	Romans 3:23
Transgress - cross the boundary;	Matthew 15:3
Iniquity - crookedness;	Isaiah 59:2
Rebellion - to go against authority;	Isaiah 1:2
Unfaithfulness - break the promise or covenant;	Ezekiel 39:23
Wickedness - what is bad;	Genesis 39:9
Evil - what is bad;	Genesis 3:5
Trespass - falling aside;	Matthew 6:14,15

## 98. What “types” of sin are there?

### Bible passages:

- 393) Psalm 51:5 - Behold, I was brought forth in iniquity, and in sin my mother conceived me.
- 394) Genesis 8:21 - . . . the imagination of man’s heart is evil from his youth.
- 395) Romans 7:18 - For I know that in me (that is, in my flesh) nothing good dwells . . .
- 396) John 3:6 - That which is born of the flesh is flesh . . .
- 397) Romans 5:12 - Therefore, just as through one man sin entered the world, and death through sin, and thus death spread to all men, because all sinned . . .
  - a. One type of sin is ORIGINAL SIN. Since Adam and Eve sinned, every child of human parents is born a sinner and has inherited a heart which can only do what is evil and bad. This is also sometimes called INHERITED SIN or BIRTH SIN.

*Flesh:* used frequently in the New Testament to refer to the “sinful nature.” It is also called in Scripture the old Adam and old man.

### Bible passages:

- 398) 1 John 3:4 - Whoever commits sin also commits lawlessness, and sin is lawlessness.
- 399) James 4:17 - Therefore, to him who knows to do good and does not do it, to him it is sin.
- 400) Matthew 15:19 - For out of the heart proceed evil thoughts, murders, adulteries, fornications, thefts, false witness, blasphemies.
  - b. Another type of sin is SIN OF ACTION - any thought, word, or action which our God forbids (sin of commission); or any time we fail to act, speak, or think as God would have us do (sins of omission).

## 99. How can we possibly be rescued from sin and its punishment?

### Bible passages:

- 401) Galatians 3:13 - Christ has redeemed us from the curse of the law, having become a curse for us (for it is written, “Cursed is everyone who hangs on a tree”) . . .
- 402) Romans 5:19 - For as by one man’s disobedience many were made sinners, so also by one Man’s obedience many will be made righteous.
- 403) Acts 4:12 - Nor is there salvation in any other, for there is no other name under heaven given among men by which we must be saved.

Our loving God has rescued us by sending His Son Jesus to die to pay for our sins. Faith (believing) in Jesus is the only way a person can be saved and have eternal life.



**What does God say about all of these commandments?**

He says, "I, the LORD your God, am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers on the children to the third and fourth generations of those who hate me, but showing mercy to thousands of those who love Me and keep My commandments."

**What does this mean?**

God threatens to punish all who do not obey these commandments. Therefore, we should fear His anger and not do anything against what He commands. God also promises grace and every blessing to those who obey these commandments. Therefore, we should love and trust Him and willingly do what He commands.

**100. Why does God tell us that He is a "jealous" God?**

**Bible narrative:**

404) Deuteronomy 7:7-10 - The LORD is faithful in keeping His gracious promises. He also without fail punishes unbelief.

**Bible passages:**

405) Isaiah 42:8 - "I am the LORD, that is My name; and My glory I will not give to another, nor My praise to graven images."

406) Isaiah 43:11 - "I, even I, am the LORD, and besides Me there is no savior."

407) Isaiah 44:8 - "Is there a God besides Me? Indeed there is no other Rock; I know not one."

God tells us He is a jealous God:

- a) To remind us that He is the only God there is. No other god can do us any good, let alone save us.
- b) To show us that He is serious about His commandments. He expects His children to do what He says.
- c) To direct us to Him as our Savior from sin.

**Wrath:** anger

**Ungodliness:** sin, doing things against God

**Unrighteousness** not doing what is right - sin



## 101. What is the punishment for sin?

### Bible narrative:

408) Genesis 2:17, 3:1-19 - Adam and Eve died because of their sin.

### Bible passages:

409) Romans 1:18 - For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men, who suppress the truth in unrighteousness.

a. The punishment for sin is the anger of God.

-----

### Bible passages:

410) Romans 6:23 - For the wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord.

411) Galatians 3:10 - "Cursed is everyone who does not continue in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them."

412) Ezekiel 18:4 - "The soul that sins shall die."

413) Romans 5:12 - Therefore, just as through one man sin entered the world, and death through sin, and thus death spread to all men, because all sinned . . .

b. The punishment for sin is death.

## 102. How does the Bible describe DEATH?

### Bible passages:

414) Genesis 3:19 - ". . . Till you return to the ground, for out of it you were taken; for dust you are and to dust you shall return."

415) Ecclesiastes 12:7 - Then the dust will return to the earth as it was, and the spirit will return to God who gave it.

a. TEMPORAL DEATH is the separation of a person's body from soul (spirit).

*Death: separation*

-----

### Bible passages:

416) Ezekiel 18:4 - "The soul who sins shall die."

417) Isaiah 59:2 - But your iniquities have separated you from your God; and your sins have hidden His face from you.

418) Ephesians 2:1 - And you He made alive, who were dead in trespasses and sins . . .

b. SPIRITUAL DEATH is the separation of a person's soul from God even while he is "living" on this earth.

### **Bible passages:**

- 419) Matthew 10:28 - "And do not fear those who kill the body but cannot kill the soul. But rather fear Him who is able to destroy both soul and body in hell."
- 420) Matthew 25:41,46 - "Then He will also say to those on the left hand, 'Depart from Me, you cursed, into the everlasting fire prepared for the devil and his angels:' . . . And these will go away into everlasting punishment."
- c. ETERNAL DEATH is the separation of a person's soul and body from God in hell forever.

### **103. Why do we need to hear of God's threat to punish sinners?**

#### **Bible passages:**

- 421) Romans 8:7,8 - The carnal mind is enmity against God . . . So then, those who are in the flesh cannot please God.
- 422) Genesis 6:5 - . . . that every intent of the thoughts of [man's] heart was only evil continually.
- We need to hear of God's threat to punish sinners because of our sinful nature which hates God and makes it impossible for us to please Him.

### **104. What effect should this threat have on us?**

#### **Bible passages:**

- 423) Deuteronomy 6:13,15 - "You shall fear the LORD your God and serve Him . . . (for the LORD your God is a jealous God among you), lest the anger of the LORD your God be aroused against you and destroy you from the face of the earth."
- 424) Psalm 119:120 - My flesh trembles for fear of You, and I am afraid of Your judgments.
- God's threat to punish those who do not obey His commandments should lead us to fear His anger and to do what He says.

### **105. What does God promise to those who love and obey Him?**

#### **Bible passages:**

- 425) Luke 1:50 - His mercy is on those who fear Him from generation to generation.
- 426) Deuteronomy 7:9 - Therefore know that the LORD your God, He is God, the faithful God who keeps covenant and mercy for a thousand generations with those who love Him and keep His commandments.
- 427) Psalm 103:11 - For as the heavens are high above the earth, so great is His mercy toward those who fear Him . . .
- God promises His grace and every blessing to those who love Him and keep His commandments.

*Mercy:* to have pity, feel sorry for.

## **106. What effect should God’s promise have on us?**

### **Bible passages:**

428) Psalm 112:1 - Blessed is the man who fears the LORD, who delights greatly in His commandments.

429) Deuteronomy 10:12,13 - And now, Israel, what does the LORD your God require of you, but to fear the LORD, your God, to walk in all His ways and to love Him, to serve the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul, and to keep the commandments of the LORD and His statutes which I command you today for your good?

God’s promise should move us to love and trust in Him and willingly do according to His commandments.

## **107. What, however, do we have to say about ourselves in view of these threats and promises of God?**

### **Bible narrative:**

430) Luke 18:9-14 - The Pharisee boasted about how good he was. The tax-collector asked God to be merciful to him, a sinner.

### **Bible passages:**

431) Isaiah 64:6 - But we are all like an unclean thing, and all our righteousnesses are like filthy rags . . .

432) Romans 3:23 - . . . for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God . . .

433) Romans 3:20 - Therefore by the deeds of the law no flesh will be justified in His sight, for by the law is the knowledge of sin.

In spite of God’s threats and promises we must still say that we have sinned against Him in what we’ve thought, said, and done.

## **108. Why is the gospel so important to us?**

### **Bible passages:**

434) John 3:16 - For God so loved the world that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him should not perish but have everlasting life.

435) Luke 2:10,11 - “Do not be afraid, for behold, I bring you good tidings of great joy which will be to all people. For there is born to you this day in the city of David a Savior, who is Christ the Lord.”

436) Romans 1:16 - For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ, for it is the power of God to salvation for everyone who believes, for the Jew first and also for the Greek.

The gospel tells us of God’s one and only solution for our sin problem. It is the Good News of His love in sending Jesus Christ to die on the cross to save us from our sins.



### The First Article

- God the Father -----
- Faith -----
- Creation -----
- Preservation -----
- Protection -----
- Our Thanks -----
- The Loss of the Image of God -----

### The Second Article

- The Person of Jesus -----
- The Office of Christ -----
- The Work of Christ -----
- Christ's Humiliation -----
- Christ's Exaltation -----
- The Purpose of Redemption -----
- Coming to Faith -----

### The Third Article

- The Holy Spirit -----
- The Work of the Holy Spirit -----
- The Holy Christian Church -----
- The Forgiveness of Sins (Justification) -----
- The Resurrection to Eternal Life -----



**109. What is a creed?**

A creed is a statement (written or spoken) of what a person believes.

The creed Luther used in his Catechism is the Apostles' Creed. It was not written by the Apostles but is a brief statement of what they believed and taught as it is found in the Bible.

There are many other written statements - creeds - which we use. Two of them are found in The Lutheran Hymnal: the Nicene Creed, page 22, and the Athanasian Creed, page 53.

**THE FIRST ARTICLE****(About Creation)**

I believe in God the Father almighty,  
Maker of heaven and earth.

***What does this mean?***

I believe that God has created me and all creatures. He has given me my body and life, eyes, ears, and all my bodily members, my mind, and all my senses and still keeps them for me.

God also preserves me by richly and daily providing clothing and shoes, food and drink, house and home, spouse and children, land, animals, and all my property and all I need to support this body and life. He protects me from all danger.

He guards and defends me from every evil.

God does all this because He is my good and gracious Father in heaven, not because of anything I have done to earn or deserve it. For all of this it is my duty to thank, praise, serve, and obey Him.

This is most certainly true

# GOD THE FATHER

## 110. Who is this God mentioned in the creed?

### Bible passages:

- 437) John 4:24 - "God is Spirit."
- 438) John 1:18 - No one has seen God at any time. The only begotten Son, who is in the bosom of the Father, He has declared Him.
- 439) Psalm 42:2 - My soul thirsts for God, for the living God.

*Spirit*: a being without a body

God is Spirit. That means that He is a very real, living being without a body. The real God is the triune God, spoken of in the Bible. (Cf. Question 26.)

## 111. What is this God like?

### Bible passages:

- 440) Psalm 90:2 - Before the mountains were brought forth, or ever You had formed the earth and the world, even from everlasting to everlasting, You are God. (Eternal - timeless)
- 441) Deuteronomy 33:27 - The eternal God is your refuge . . .
- 442) Malachi 3:6 - "For I am the LORD, I do not change." (Unchangeable)
- 443) Genesis 17:1 - "I am Almighty God." (Omnipotent - all powerful)
- 444) Matthew 19:26 - ". . . with God all things are possible."
- 445) John 21:17 - "Lord, you know all things . . ." (Omniscient--all knowing)
- 446) Psalm 139:1-4 - O LORD, You have searched me and known me. You know my sitting down and my rising up; You understand my thought afar off. You comprehend my path and my lying down, and are acquainted with all my ways. For there is not a word on my tongue, but behold, O LORD, You know it altogether. (Omniscient)
- 447) Jeremiah 23:24 - "Can anyone hide himself in secret places, so I shall not see him?" says the LORD; "Do I not fill heaven and earth?" says the LORD. (Omnipresent - present everywhere)
- 448) Leviticus 19:2 - "'You shall be holy, for I the LORD your God am holy.'" (Sinless)
- 449) Deuteronomy 32:4 - He is the Rock, His work is perfect; for all His ways are justice, a God of truth and without injustice; righteous and upright is He. (Fair and impartial - treats everyone the same)
- 450) 2 Timothy 2:13 - If we are faithless, He remains faithful; He cannot deny Himself. (Faithful - keeps His promises)



451) Psalm 145:9 - The LORD is good to all, and His tender mercies are over all His works. (Good; merciful - showing pity)

452) 1 John 4:8 - . . . God is love.

453) Exodus 34:6,7 - "The LORD, the LORD God, merciful and gracious, long-suffering, and abounding in goodness and truth, keeping mercy for thousands, forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin . . ."

These Bible passages all tell about the characteristics or ATTRIBUTES of God.

## **112. Who is God the Father?**

### **Bible passages:**

454) Matthew 28:19 - "Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit . . ."

455) John 15:26 - "But when the Helper comes, whom I (Jesus) shall send to you from the Father, the Spirit of truth who proceeds from the Father, He will testify of Me."

456) 2 Corinthians 13:14 - The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Spirit be with you all.

God the Father is one of the persons of God, together with God the Son and God the Holy Spirit.

Sometimes when the Bible speaks of "God," it is referring to God the Father (2 Corinthians 13:14).

## **113. Why is God called "Father"?**

### **Bible narrative:**

457) John 10:25-27 - Jesus told people about the work his Father had sent Him to do.

### **Bible passages:**

458) 2 Corinthians 1:3 - Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of mercies and God of all comfort . . .

459) Matthew 11:27 - "All things have been delivered to Me by My Father, and no one knows the Son except the Father. Nor does anyone know the Father except the Son, and he to whom the Son wills to reveal Him."

a. God is the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ.

**Bible passages:**

- 460) Galatians 3:26 - For you are all [children] of God through faith in Christ Jesus.
- 461) 1 Chronicles 29:10 - . . . David said, "Blessed are You, LORD God of Israel, our Father, forever and ever."
- 462) Matthew 5:45 - . . . that you may be [children] of your Father in heaven.
- b. God is also the Father of His people, the believers.

**FAITH ( BELIEVING )****114. What is meant when each one of us says, "I believe in God. . .?"****Bible passages:**

- 463) John 17:3 - "And this is eternal life, that they may know You, the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom You have sent."
- 464) John 20:31 - . . . but these are written that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and that believing you may have life in His name.
- 465) Romans 10:17 - So then faith comes by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.
- 466) 1 Thessalonians 2:13 - For this reason we also thank God without ceasing, because when you receive the word of God which you heard from us, you welcomed it not as the word of men, but as it is in truth, the word of God . . .

a. When we say, "I believe in God," it means that we accept as true what He tells us in His word. It is the Bible which tells us about Jesus.

**Bible passages:**

- 467) John 3:16 - For God so loved the world that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him should not perish but have everlasting life.
- 468) Psalm 78:22 - Because they did not believe in God, and did not trust in His salvation.
- 469) Hebrews 11:1 - Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen.
- 470) John 20:29 - "Blessed are those who have not seen and yet have believed."

- 471) Romans 4:20,21 - [Abraham] did not waver at the promise of God through unbelief, but was strengthened in faith, giving glory to God, and being fully convinced that what He had promised He was also able to perform.
- 472) 2 Timothy 1:12 - . . . for I know whom I have believed and am persuaded that He is able to keep what I have committed to Him until that Day.

b. When each one of us says, "I believe in God . . ." it means that we TRUST in God and the fact that His Son is our Savior from sin.

## **115. Are there those who do not believe in God?**

### **Bible passages:**

- 473) Psalm 14:1 - The fool has said in his heart, "There is no God."
- 474) 2 Corinthians 6:14,15 - Do not be unequally yoked together with unbelievers. For what fellowship has righteousness with lawlessness? And what communion has light with darkness? And what accord has Christ with Belial? Or what part has a believer with an unbeliever?
- 475) Psalm 78:22 - . . . they did not believe in God, and did not trust in His salvation.
- 476) 2 John 9 - Whoever transgresses and does not abide in the doctrine of Christ does not have God.
- 477) John 5:23 - ". . . all should honor the Son just as they honor the Father. He who does not honor the Son does not honor the Father who sent Him."

The Bible tells us that those who do not trust in God are unbelievers. There are other words to describe different types of unbelievers:

Atheist (says there is no God)

Infidel (an unbeliever)

Agnostic (does not know what to believe and says there is no way to find out)

Superstitious (believes in substitutes for God)

Idolater (believes in a false god)

Deist or theist (believes in a god or supreme being, but does not believe Jesus is God's Son)



## CREATION

### 116. What are we saying when we confess that our almighty Father is “Maker of heaven and earth”?

#### Bible narrative:

- 478) Genesis 1 and 2 - This is God’s own record of the origin of the universe including all living and non-living things.

**Create:** make something that was not there before, to make something out of nothing

#### Bible passages:

- 479) Genesis 1:1 - In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth.
- 480) Exodus 20:11 - For in six days the Lord made the heavens and the earth, the sea, and all that is in them, and rested on the seventh day.
- 481) Romans 4:17 - . . . God, who gives life to the dead and calls those things which do not exist as though they did.
- 482) Hebrews 11:3 - By faith we understand that the worlds were framed by the word of God, so that the things which are seen were not made of things which are visible.
- 483) Colossians 1:16 - For by Him all things were created that are in heaven and that are on earth, visible and invisible . . .

**Visible:** can be seen  
**Invisible:** cannot be seen

God created the heavens, the earth, and everything in them by the word of His almighty power.

In addition to His making all the things which are in the world, God created time and location.

His creation includes many things which we cannot see: air, electricity, light, heat, natural gases, wind, and so on. The very “building blocks” of all things - atoms and molecules - are not visible to the naked eye.

### 117. What is God’s most important invisible creation?

#### Bible passages:

- 484) Hebrews 1:14 - Are they not all ministering spirits sent forth to minister for those who will inherit salvation?
- 485) Psalm 103:20,21 - Bless the LORD, you His angels, who excel in strength, who do His word, heeding the voice of His word. Bless the LORD, all you hosts, you ministers of His, who do His pleasure.

The foremost of God's invisible creatures are the angels. They are spirit-beings whom God uses to serve the believers. Occasionally angels took a visible form so that people could see them. For example, the angel Gabriel appeared to Zacharias and Mary before the birth of Christ (Luke 1). An entire multitude of angels appeared to the shepherds after Christ was born (Luke 2). Two angels announced the resurrection of Jesus on Easter morning (John 20).

## **118. What does the Bible say about the creation of human beings?**

### **Bible narrative:**

486) Genesis 1:26-2:25 - This account includes the Biblical details of the creation of Adam and Eve, the first human beings.

### **Bible passages:**

487) Genesis 1:26 - Then God said, "Let Us make man in Our image, according to Our likeness."

488) Genesis 1:27,28 - So God created man in His own image; in the image of God He created him; male and female He created them. Then God blessed them, and God said to them, "Be fruitful and multiply; fill the earth and subdue it . . ."

489) Genesis 2:7 - And the LORD God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living being.

490) Psalm 139:14 - I will praise You, for I am fearfully and wonderfully made; marvelous are Your works, and that my soul knows very well.

The Bible tells us that God made two human beings on the sixth day of creation to rule over everything He had made.

## **119. How are human beings similar to other creatures which God made to live on the planet Earth?**

### **Bible narrative:**

491) Matthew 6:25-34 - Jesus used the examples of the birds and flowers to teach a lesson about trusting in our God.

Human beings share a place to live with the animals, insects, birds, and many other created things. So it is not surprising that there are some similarities in the way each lives on earth. For example, the animals, birds, and insects all breathe air. Most animals have blood which delivers oxygen and food to their bodies, etc.

## 120. How are human beings different from the rest of the creatures God made?

### Bible passages:

- 492) Genesis 1:27 - So God created man in His own image; in the image of God He created him; male and female He created them.
- 493) Ephesians 4:24 - . . . and that you put on the new man which was created according to God, in righteousness and true holiness.
- 494) Colossians 3:10 - . . . and have put on the new man who is renewed in knowledge according to the image of Him who created him . . .

God made human beings in His image  
- sinless and right with Him. What  
knowledge Adam and Eve had was perfect.

*Image of God:* like  
God in righteousness  
holiness, and perfect  
knowledge

Human beings also enjoyed these privileges  
of God's grace in connection with their  
creation:

- a. Human beings were able to have a relationship with God (spirituality).  
Jeremiah 11:4; 31:33-34.
- b. Human beings were made able to sin or not sin (moral beings).  
Genesis 2:16,17 - God told man not to eat of the Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil. Since the Fall, human beings are only able to sin.
- c. Human beings were made to live forever (immortal). Genesis 2:9  
- The Tree of Life was planted for human enjoyment. Genesis 3:20-24 - God had to guard the way to the Tree of Life after Adam and Eve sinned, so they would not eat from it and "live forever" as condemned sinners.
- d. Human beings were given superior mental powers (intelligence and rationality and the ability to communicate with language). Genesis 1:28 - God's command to subdue the earth. Psalm 8:4-6 - God crowned human beings with honor and glory in order to have dominion over the creation. This has also been lost since the Fall.
- e. God gave human beings the necessary physical characteristics to fulfill His command to subdue and have dominion: the ability to walk upright, 3-D vision, an opposing thumb, and so on.

**121. What is wrong with man-made ideas of origins  
- especially the theory of evolution?**

**Bible passages:**

- 495) Genesis 1:1 - In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth.
- 496) Hebrews 11:3 - By faith we understand that the worlds were framed by the word of God, so that the things which are seen were not made of things which are visible.
- 497) Job 38:4 - "Where were you when I laid the foundations of the earth? Tell Me, if you have understanding."
- 498) Romans 1:25 - [The unrighteous] exchanged the truth of God for a lie . . .
- 499) 2 Peter 3:5 - For this they willfully forget: that by the word of God the heavens were of old, and the earth standing out of water and in water . . .

All man-made ideas of origins - including the theory of evolution  
- are wrong because:

- a. They contradict the clear words of the Bible:

	C R E A T I O N	E V O L U T I O N
God	Yes	No
How?	Powerful word!	Chance Happenings
Raw materials	Nothing	"Primordial" cells
Time of creation	Six days	Millions of years
Age of earth	6,000 years	4.6 billion years (over 10 billion years for the universe)
Human beings	Image of God	Animal ancestors
Animal relationships	"Kinds"	All "species" related
Responsibility	To God	To one's self

- b. They violate natural laws which God also created in the beginning. The following laws are accepted by scientists as true, even by those who still think God did not create the world:
- 1) The theory of evolution contradicts the law which says everything tends to fall apart and “die” a heat death (2nd Law of Thermodynamics - entropy).
  - 2) The theory of evolution contradicts the law which says that all life must come from life (the Law of Biogenesis).
  - 3) The theory of evolution depends on impossible mathematical “odds” for the formation of living cells (the laws of statistical probability).
  - 4) There is an absence of “missing links” in the fossil record and in our present day. There are no transitional forms.
  - 5) The theory of evolution is not science, since no one was there to observe and record what happened. True science involves things that can be observed, repeated, and possibly disproved.

**122. How did God show His goodness in the creation of human beings?**

**Bible narrative:**

500) 1 Corinthians 12:12-27 - Jesus’ apostle uses the picture of the unity of the bodily members as a picture of the Church.

**Bible passages:**

501) Psalm 139:13,14 - For You have formed my inward parts; You have covered me in my mother’s womb. I will praise You, for I am fearfully and wonderfully made.

502) Exodus 4:11 - So the LORD said to him, “Who has made man’s mouth? Or who makes the mute, the deaf, the seeing, or the blind? Have not I, the LORD?”

503) Daniel 1:17 . . . God gave them knowledge and skill in all literature and wisdom . . .

God showed His goodness in our creation by giving us body and life, eyes, ears, all our bodily members, our ability to think, and our senses.



# PRESERVATION



## 123. What does God do for our preservation?

### Bible narrative:

504) Matthew 6:25-34 - God provides food and clothing.

### Bible passages:

505) Psalm 36:6 - O LORD, You preserve man and beast.

506) Psalm 145:15,16 - The eyes of all look expectantly to You, and You give them their food in due season. You open Your hand and satisfy the desire of every living thing.

507) Psalm 37:25 - I have been young, and now am old; yet I have not seen the righteous forsaken, nor his descendants begging bread.

508) 1 Peter 5:7- . . . casting all your care upon Him, for He cares for you.

**Preservation:** making things last

Our God gives us clothing, food, and everything else we need for our lives here on this earth.

## 124. How does God provide our daily needs?

### Bible narratives:

509) 1 Kings 17:1-16 - God provided for Elijah through miracles.

510) John 6:3-13 - Jesus fed 5,000 by a miracle.

a. God can and has provided for human need through miracles.

### Bible passages:

511) Genesis 8:22 - "While the earth remains, seedtime and harvest, and cold and heat, and winter and summer, and day and night shall not cease."

512) Genesis 9:3 - "Every moving thing that lives shall be food for you. I have given you all things, even as the green herbs."

513) Psalm 104:14 - He causes the grass to grow for the cattle, and vegetation for the service of man, that he may bring forth food from the earth . . .

**Miracle:** a supernatural act

- b. God normally provides for human need through natural means.

**Bible passage:**

514) Acts 14:17 - "Nevertheless [God] did not leave Himself without witness, in that He did good, gave us rain from heaven and fruitful seasons, filling our hearts with food and gladness."

*Natural means:* God provides for us through the use of the laws of nature.

- c. God provides for us richly and daily.

## PROTECTION

### 125. What does our heavenly Father do for our protection?

**Bible narratives:**

- 515) 1 Samuel 17 - God protected David from the giant Goliath.
- 516) Daniel 6:16-23 - God protected Daniel when he was in the lions' den.

*Evil:* this word sometimes means the same as sin; here it refers to everything bad and harmful that can happen to people

God protects us from all danger and guards and defends us from every evil.

### 126. How does our Father protect us?

**Bible passage:**

517) Psalm 91:10,11 - No evil shall befall you, nor shall any plague come near your dwelling; for He shall give His angels charge over you, to keep you in all your ways.

- a. Our Father sends His angels to guard and protect us from evil.

**Bible narratives:**

- 518) Exodus 2:1-10 - God delivered the infant Moses from death.
- 519) Exodus 14 - God protected the people of Israel from the Egyptians by dividing the Red Sea and making a pathway through it.
- 520) Acts 12:5-11 - An angel delivered Peter from prison.

- b. Our Father protects us by keeping evil away from us.

**Bible passages:**

- 521) Romans 8:28 - And we know that all things work together for good to those who love God, to those who are the called according to His purpose.
  - 522) Genesis 50:20 - But as for you, you meant evil against me; but God meant it for good, in order to bring it about as it is this day, to save many people alive.
  - 523) Acts 14:22 - . . . strengthening the souls of the disciples, exhorting them to continue in the faith, and saying, "We must through many tribulations enter the kingdom of God."
- c. Our Father may let troubles come to us in a way that serves for our good.

*Tribulation:* trouble, affliction, distress

O U R T H A N K S

**127. Why does our heavenly Father provide for our bodily needs, and preserve and protect us?**

**Bible passages:**

- 524) Lamentations 3:22,23 - Through the LORD's mercies we are not consumed, because His compassions fail not. They are new every morning; great is Your faithfulness.
- 525) Psalm 103:13 - As a father pities his children, so the LORD pities those who fear Him.
- 526) Romans 8:32 - He who did not spare His own Son, but delivered Him up for us all, how shall He not with Him also freely give us all things?

God gives us what we need for our life because He is good and gracious.

**128. How does our heavenly Father want us to show our appreciation for what He has given us?**

**Bible passages:**

- 527) Psalm 106:1 - Praise the LORD! Oh, give thanks to the LORD, for He is good! For His mercy endures forever.
- 528) 1 Samuel 12:24 - "Only fear the LORD, and serve Him in truth with all your heart; for consider what great things He has done for you."
- 529) 1 Corinthians 10:31 - Therefore, whether you eat or drink, or whatever you do, do all to the glory of God.
- 530) 1 Corinthians 6:20 - For you were bought at a price; therefore glorify God in your body and in your spirit, which are God's.

Our heavenly Father wants us to show our appreciation by thanking, praising, serving, and obeying Him.

## THE LOSS OF THE IMAGE OF GOD

(THE FALL OF MAN)

**129. How did Adam and Eve lose the image of God?  
(Cf. Question 120, Image of God.)**

**Bible narrative:**

- 531) Genesis 3:1-19 - The devil tempted Eve and Adam to sin.
- 532) Ephesians 4:24 - The need to "put on the new man" shows that human beings had lost their righteousness and holiness.

**Bible passage:**

- 533) Romans 5:12 - Therefore, just as through one man sin entered the world, and death through sin, and thus death spread to all men, because all sinned . . .

Adam and Eve lost the image of God by sinning.

**130. Who tempted Adam and Eve to sin?**

**Bible narrative:**

- 534) Genesis 3:1-19 - The devil speaking through a serpent tempted Adam and Eve.

**Bible passage:**

535) 1 John 3:8 - He who sins is of the devil, for the devil has sinned from the beginning.

536) Revelation 12:9 - So the great dragon was cast out, that serpent of old, called the Devil and Satan, who deceives the whole world; he was cast to earth, and his angels were cast out with him.

The devil was successful in his attempt to get Adam and Eve to sin.

**131. Who is the devil?****Bible passages:**

537) 2 Peter 2:4 - . . . God did not spare the angels who sinned, but cast them down to hell and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved for judgment.

538) John 8:44 - [The devil] was a murderer from the beginning and does not stand in the truth.

The devil is the leader of a group of angels who disobeyed God and were removed from heaven to hell.

**132. Since human beings have lost the image of God, what has He done to rescue them?****Bible passages:**

539) Genesis 3:15 - [God said to the serpent], "And I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your seed and her Seed; He shall bruise your head, and you shall bruise His heel."

540) 1 John 3:8 - For this purpose the Son of Man was manifested, that He might destroy the works of the devil.

541) 2 Timothy 1:9,10 - [God] saved us and called us with a holy calling, not according to our works, but according to His purpose and grace which was given us in Christ Jesus before time began, but has now been revealed by the appearing of our Savior Jesus Christ, who has abolished death and brought life and immortality to light through the gospel . . .

542) Ephesians 4:24 - . . . and that you put on the new man which was created according to God, in righteousness and true holiness.

Instead of destroying the world He had made because of the sin of Adam and Eve, God in His love sent His Son to save the world from sin and death.



***(About Redemption)***

I believe in Jesus Christ, His only Son, our Lord, who was conceived by the Holy Spirit, born of the virgin Mary, suffered under Pontius Pilate, was crucified, died and was buried. He descended into hell. The third day He rose again from the dead. He ascended into heaven and is seated at the right hand of God the Father almighty. From there He will come to judge the living and the dead.

***What does this mean?***

I believe that Jesus Christ, true God, begotten of the Father from eternity, and also true man, born of the virgin Mary, is my Lord.

He has redeemed me, a lost and condemned person, purchased and won me from all sin, from death, and from the power of the devil, not with gold or silver, but with His holy, precious blood and His innocent suffering and death.

He did this that I should be His very own, live under Him in His kingdom, and serve Him in eternal righteousness, innocence, and joy; just as He is risen from death, lives and reigns in eternity.

This is most certainly true.



THE PERSON OF JESUS

**133. Who is Jesus?**

**Bible passages:**

543) Matthew 3:17 - And suddenly a voice came from heaven, saying, "This is My beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased."

544) Luke 1:30,31 - Then the angel said to [Mary], ". . . behold, you will conceive in your womb and bring forth a Son, and shall call His name JESUS."

Jesus is TRUE GOD, begotten by the Father from eternity, and TRUE MAN, born of the virgin Mary.

### 134. Why do you believe that Jesus is TRUE GOD?

#### Bible passages:

- 545) 1 John 5:20 - . . . we are in Him who is true, in His Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God and eternal life.
- 546) Romans 9:5 - . . . of whom are the fathers and from whom, according to the flesh, Christ came, who is over all, the eternally blessed God.
- 547) John 1:1 - In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.
- 548) Luke 2:11 - "For there is born to you this day in the city of David a Savior, who is Christ the Lord."
- 549) Matthew 1:23 - "Behold, a virgin shall be with child, and bear a Son, and they shall call His name Immanuel," which is translated, "God with us."
- 550) Matthew 16:16 - And Simon Peter answered and said, "You are the Christ, the Son of the living God."

**Word:** the Son of God, cf John 1:14

- a. We believe that Jesus is true God, because the Bible says He is God. (Divine names)

-----

#### Bible passages:

- 551) Hebrews 13:8 - Jesus Christ is the same yesterday, today, and forever. (Unchangeable)
- 552) John 21:17 - "Lord, You know all things." (Omniscient)
- 553) John 1:1 - In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. (Eternal)
- 554) Matthew 28:20 - ". . . and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age." (Omnipresent)
- 555) Luke 8:25 - For He commands even the winds and water, and they obey Him! (Omnipotent)

- b. We believe that Jesus is true God, because He has qualities which only God has. (Divine attributes)

-----

#### Bible narratives:

- 556) John 2:1-11 - Jesus changed water into wine.
- 557) Matthew 8:23-27 - Jesus calmed a storm on the Sea of Galilee.
- 558) Mark 7:31-37 - Jesus healed the deaf-mute.
- 559) John 11:38-44 - Jesus raised Lazarus from the dead.

**Bible passages:**

- 560) Matthew 9:6 - "But that you may know that the Son of Man has power on earth to forgive sins" - then He said to the paralytic, "Arise, take up your bed, and go to your house."
- 561) John 1:3 - All things were made through Him, and without Him nothing was made that was made.
- 562) Hebrews 1:3 - [Christ] who being the brightness of His glory and the express image of His person, and upholding all things by the word of His power, . . . sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high.
- 563) John 5:22 - For the Father judges no one, but has committed all judgment to the Son . . .
- 564) Romans 1:4 - [Jesus was] declared to be the Son of God with power, according to the Spirit of holiness, by the resurrection from the dead.

c. We believe that Jesus is true God, because He did things that only God can do. (Divine works)

-----

**Bible passages:**

- 565) John 5:23 - ". . . all men should honor the Son just as they honor the Father. He who does not honor the Son does not honor the Father who sent Him."
- 566) Revelation 5:12,13 - "Worthy is the Lamb who was slain to receive power and riches and wisdom, and strength and honor and glory and blessing!" And every creature which is in heaven and on the earth and under the earth and such as are in the sea, and all that are in them, I heard saying: "Blessing and honor and glory and power be to Him who sits on the throne, and to the Lamb, forever and ever!"

d. We believe Jesus is true God, because the Bible says we should honor Him as God. (Divine honor and glory)

**135. Why do we believe that Jesus is TRUE MAN?**

**Bible passages:**

- 567) 1 Timothy 2:5 - For there is one God and one Mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus.
- 568) Hebrews 2:14 - Inasmuch then as the children have partaken of flesh and blood, He Himself likewise shared in the same, that through death He might destroy him who had the power of death, that is, the devil.
- 569) Matthew 18:11 - For the Son of Man has come to save that which was lost.



a. We believe that Jesus is true man, because the Bible says He is.

-----  
**Bible passages:**

- 570) Luke 24:39 - "Behold, My hands and My feet, that it is I Myself. Handle Me and see, for a spirit does not have flesh and bones as you see I have."
- 571) Luke 2:12 - "And this will be the sign to you: You will find a Babe wrapped in swaddling cloths, lying in a manger."
- 572) Luke 2:52 - And Jesus increased in wisdom and stature, and in favor with God and men.
- 573) Matthew 4:2 - And when He had fasted forty days and forty nights, afterward He was hungry.
- 574) Mark 4:38 - But he was in the stern (of the boat), asleep on a pillow.
- 575) John 11:35 - Jesus wept.
- 576) John 19:28 - Jesus . . . said, "I thirst!"
- 577) Matthew 27:50 - Jesus, when He had cried out again with a loud voice, yielded up His spirit.

b. We believe Jesus Christ is a true man, because He looked and lived like one. Many things happened to Him because He was a human being. (Human attributes)

**136. How did Jesus become a human being?**

**Bible narrative:**

- 578) Luke 1:26-38 - The angel Gabriel told Mary that she was to be the mother of the Savior.
- 579) Matthew 1:18-25 - The angel also told Joseph, Mary's betrothed, about her child.
- 580) Luke 2:1-21 - Jesus was born in Bethlehem and visited by shepherds.

**Bible passages:**

- 581) Isaiah 7:14 - "Therefore the LORD Himself will give you a sign, Behold, the virgin shall conceive and bear a Son, and shall call His name Immanuel."
- 582) Luke 1:35 - And the angel answered and said to [Mary], "The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Highest will overshadow you; therefore, also, that Holy One who is to be born will be called the Son of God."
- 583) Luke 2:11 - "For there is born to you this day in the city of David a Savior, who is Christ the Lord."

584) Galatians 4:4,5 - But when the fulness of the time had come, God sent forth His Son, born of a woman, born under the law, to redeem those who were under the law, that we might receive the adoption as sons.

Jesus became a human being when He was conceived in Mary by the Holy Spirit. This is sometimes called the INCARNATION of Jesus Christ: Nine months later Jesus was born in Bethlehem.

**Conceive:** to start a (human) being; to become pregnant

**Incarnation:** to get a human body

### **137. What type of person is Jesus?**

#### **Bible passages:**

585) Colossians 2:9 - For in [Christ] dwells all the fulness of the Godhead bodily.

586) John 1:14 - And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we beheld His glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father, full of grace and truth.

587) 1 Timothy 3:16 - God was manifested in the flesh . . .

Jesus is TRUE GOD and TRUE MAN in one person.  
(Personal Union)

### **138. Why was it necessary for Jesus to be true man?**

#### **Bible passages:**

588) Galatians 4:4,5 - But when the fulness of the time had come, God sent forth His Son, born of a woman, born under the law, to redeem those who were under the law, that we might receive the adoption as sons.

589) Hebrews 2:14 - Inasmuch then as the children have partaken of flesh and blood, He Himself likewise shared in the same, that through death He might destroy him who had the power of death, that is, the devil . . .

590) Hebrews 2:17 - Therefore, in all things He had to be made like His brethren, that He might be a merciful and faithful High Priest in things pertaining to God, to make propitiation for the sins of the people.

591) 1 Peter 3:18 - For Christ also suffered once for sins, the just for the unjust, that He might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh but made alive by the Spirit.

- a. Jesus had to be true man in order to fulfill the law perfectly for us. (This is sometimes called the ACTIVE OBEDIENCE.)
- b. Jesus had to be true man so that He could be killed as the sacrifice for human sins. (This is sometimes called the PASSIVE OBEDIENCE.)

### 139. Why was it necessary for Jesus to be true God?

#### Bible passages:

- 592) Psalm 49:7 - None of them can by any means redeem his brother, nor give to God a ransom for him - for the redemption of their souls is costly . . .
- 593) John 1:29 - "Behold! The Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world!"
- 594) Hebrews 7:26,27 - For such a High Priest was fitting for us, who is holy, harmless, undefiled, separate from sinners, and has become higher than the heavens; who does not need daily, as those high priests, to offer up sacrifices, first for His own sins and then for the people's, for this He did once for all when He offered up Himself.

*Redeem:* to buy back, ransom

Jesus had to be true God in order to be the perfect sacrifice for human sins.

### 140. What is the meaning of the name JESUS?

#### Bible passages:

- 595) Matthew 1:21 - "And she will bring forth a Son, and you shall call His name JESUS, for He will save His people from their sins."
- 596) Acts 4:12 - "Nor is there salvation in any other, for there is no other name under heaven given among men by which we must be saved."

JESUS is the personal name of our Redeemer. His name means "Savior." Jesus is the only Savior there is.



# THE OFFICE OF CHRIST

## 141. What is the meaning of the name CHRIST?

### Bible passages:

597) John 4:25 - The woman said to Him, "I know that Messiah is coming" (who is called Christ) . . .

598) Acts 10:38 - ". . . God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Spirit and with power . . ."

The name Christ means "The Anointed." He was anointed with the Holy Spirit as the Prophet, High Priest, and King.

**Anoint:** to pour on oil; to use oil in a ceremony to show a special selection or appointment

## 142. How did Christ carry out His office as the PROPHET?

### Bible narratives:

599) Luke 4:16-30 - Jesus preached the Gospel in the synagogue of Nazareth.

600) John 3:1-18 - Jesus taught Nicodemus.

**Prophet:** one who "speaks for" another; a mouthpiece

### Bible passages:

601) Deuteronomy 18:15 - The LORD your God will raise up for you a Prophet like me from your midst, from your brethren, Him you shall hear . . .

602) Isaiah 61:1 - "The Spirit of the Lord GOD is upon Me, because the LORD has anointed Me to preach good tidings to the poor . . ."

603) John 6:68 - Then Simon Peter answered Him, "Lord, to whom shall we go? You have the words of eternal life."

a. Christ carried out His office as the Prophet by preaching the gospel of forgiveness of sins.

-----  

### Bible passages:

604) Mark 16:15 - "Go into all the world and preach the gospel to every creature."

605) Acts 1:8 - "But you shall receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you; and you shall be witnesses to Me in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the end of the earth."

606) Luke 10:16 - "He who hears you hears Me, he who rejects you rejects Me, and he who rejects Me rejects Him who sent Me."

607) Matthew 28:18-20 - "All authority has been given to Me in heaven and on earth. Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all things that I have commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age."

b. Christ continues to carry out His office as the Prophet by proclaiming the gospel through His people.

### 143. How did Christ carry out His office as the HIGH PRIEST?

#### Bible narratives:

608) Leviticus 16 - On the great Day of Atonement the high priest of Israel entered the Holiest part of the Tabernacle with sacrificial blood for the sins of himself and all the people.

609) Hebrews 9:6-10:18 - Christ is the High Priest who sacrificed Himself on the cross for the forgiveness of sins.

#### Bible passages:

610) John 1:29 - Behold! The Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world!

611) Hebrews 7:26,27 - For such a High Priest was fitting for us, who is holy, harmless, undefiled, separate from sinners, and has become higher than the heavens; who does not need daily, as those high priests, to offer up sacrifices, first for His own sins and then for the people's, for this He did once for all when He offered up Himself.

612) Ephesians 5:2 - . . . Christ also has loved us and given Himself for us, an offering and a sacrifice to God . . .

a. Christ carried out His office as the High Priest by sacrificing Himself to take away the sins of all the people in the world.

-----

#### Bible passages:

613) 1 John 2:1,2 - And if anyone sins, we have an Advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous. And He Himself is the propitiation for our sins, and not for ours only but also for the whole world.

614) Romans 8:34 - It is Christ who died, and furthermore is also risen, who is even at the right hand of God, who also makes intercession for us.

b. Christ continues to carry out His office as the High Priest by speaking in our behalf before the Father.

**Priest:** one who sacrifices, intercedes

**Advocate:** like a lawyer, one who speaks for another

**Propitiation:** satisfactory payment; a sacrifice which turns away wrath

**Intercede:** to go between; to plead for another's benefit

## 144. How did Christ carry out His office as the KING?

### Bible narrative:

615) Daniel 2:1-45 - When Daniel explained Nebuchadnezzar's dream, he told of the coming of the world's rightful King - Jesus Christ.

*King: one who rules*

### Bible passages:

616) John 18:36,37 - Jesus answered, "My kingdom is not of this world. If my kingdom were of this world, My servants would fight, so that I should not be delivered to the Jews; but now My kingdom is not from here."

Pilate therefore said to Him, "Are you a king then?" Jesus answered, "You say rightly that I am a king. For this cause I was born, and for this cause I have come into the world, that I should bear witness to the truth. Everyone who is of the truth hears My voice."

617) Luke 17:21 - ". . .the kingdom of God is within you."

618) Romans 14:17 - . . . for the kingdom of God is not food and drink, but righteousness and peace and joy in the Holy Spirit.

619) 1 John 3:8 - For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that He might destroy the works of the devil.

- a. Christ carried out His office as the King by conquering all our spiritual enemies through His death on the cross. He also ruled His people with the gospel.

-----  

### Bible passages:

620) Acts 20:28 - "Therefore take heed to yourselves and to all the flock, among which the Holy Spirit has made you overseers, to shepherd the church of God which He purchased with His own blood."

621) 2 Timothy 4:18 - And the Lord will deliver me from every evil work and preserve me for His heavenly kingdom.

622) John 10:27,28 - "My sheep hear My voice, and I know them, and they follow Me. And I give them eternal life, and they shall never perish; neither shall anyone snatch them out of My hand."

623) Romans 8:38,39 - For I am persuaded that neither death nor life, nor angels nor principalities nor powers, nor things present nor things to come, nor height, nor depth, nor any other created thing, shall be able to separate us from the love of God which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

- b. Christ continues to carry out His office as the King by ruling His people with His Word and by protecting us from every enemy of our faith.



# THE WORK OF CHRIST

## 145. What is the work of Christ called?

### Bible passages:

- 624) Ephesians 1:7 - In [Christ] we have redemption through His blood, the forgiveness of sins . . .
- 625) Titus 2:14 - [Christ] gave Himself for us, that He might redeem us from every lawless deed and purify for Himself His own special people, zealous for good works.

*Redeem:* to buy back, ransom

One of the words the Bible uses to describe Christ's work is REDEMPTION.

## 146. Why did Christ come to redeem us?

### Bible narrative:

- 626) Romans 5:12-21 - Jesus reversed the deadly effect of Adam's sin.

### Bible passages:

- 627) Romans 3:23 - . . . for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God.
- 628) Ephesians 2:1 - And you He made alive, who were dead in trespasses and sins . . .
- 629) John 8:34 - ". . . whoever commits sin is a slave of sin."
- 630) 1 John 4:10 - In this is love, not that we loved God, but that He loved us and sent His Son to be the propitiation for our sins.

Christ came to redeem us because of His love for us lost and condemned sinners.

## 147. What was the ransom price required for our redemption?

### Bible passages:

- 631) 1 John 1:7 - . . . the blood of Jesus Christ His Son cleanses us from all sin.
- 632) 1 Peter 1:18,19 - . . . knowing that you were not redeemed with corruptible things, like silver and gold . . . but with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot.

633) Matthew 20:28 - “. . . just as the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give His life a ransom for many.”

**Ransom:** the price paid to set someone free

The ransom price necessary for our redemption was the precious blood of Jesus Christ. He gave His life for mankind.

#### **148. Why was the blood of Christ the only possible ransom?**

##### **Bible passages:**

634) Psalm 49:7 - None of them can by any means redeem his brother, nor give to God a ransom for him . . .

635) Matthew 16:26 - “For what is a man profited if he gains the whole world, and loses his own soul? Or what will a man give in exchange for his soul?”

All the money or precious things in the world could not pay for human sins.

#### **149. Who has been redeemed?**

##### **Bible passages:**

636) John 1:29 - “Behold! The Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world!”

637) 2 Corinthians 5:19 - . . . God was in Christ reconciling the world to Himself, not imputing their trespasses to them, and has committed to us the word of reconciliation.

638) 1 John 2:2 - And [Christ] Himself is the propitiation for our sins, and not for ours only but also for the whole world.

Through His death Christ redeemed every human being, whether now dead, living, or yet to live.

#### **150. How does the redemption of Christ work for us?**

##### **Bible passages:**

639) Isaiah 53:5,6 - But He was wounded for our transgressions, He was bruised for our iniquities; the chastisement for our peace was upon Him, and by His stripes we are healed. All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned everyone to his own way; and the LORD has laid on Him the iniquity of us all.



640) 2 Corinthians 5:21 - For He made Him who knew no sin to be sin for us, that we might become the righteousness of God in Him.

641) Romans 4:25 - [Christ] was delivered up because of our offenses, and was raised because of our justification.

Christ was without sin. He suffered and died because of OUR sins. He did all this as our Substitute to take away our sins.

This is sometimes called the VICARIOUS ATONEMENT.

**Vicarious:**  
substitutionary  
**Atonement:** anything a person does to set things straight or make things right

### 151. From what has Christ redeemed us?

#### Bible passages:

642) 1 John 1:7 - . . . the blood of Jesus Christ His Son cleanses us from all sin.

643) Galatians 3:13 - Christ has redeemed us from the curse of the law, having become a curse for us (for it is written, "Cursed is everyone who hangs on a tree") . . .

644) Colossians 2:13 - And you, being dead in your trespasses . . . He has made alive together with Him, having forgiven you all trespasses.

645) Romans 6:18 - And having been set free from sin, you became slaves of righteousness.

a. Christ has redeemed us from slavery to SIN.

-----  
**Bible passages:**

646) 2 Timothy 1:10 - [Christ] has abolished death and brought life and immortality to light through the gospel . . .

647) 1 Corinthians 15:54-57 - "Death is swallowed up in victory. O Death, where is your sting? O Hades, where is your victory?" The sting of death is sin, and the strength of sin is the law. But thanks be to God, who gives us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.

648) John 11:25,26 - "I am the resurrection and the life. He who believes in Me, though he may die, he shall live. And whoever lives and believes in Me shall never die."

b. Christ has redeemed us from ETERNAL DEATH.

**Immortality:** not dying; no death

**Bible passages:**

- 649) Genesis 3:15 - "And I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your seed and her Seed; He shall bruise your head, and you shall bruise His heel."
- 650) 1 John 3:8 - For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that He might destroy the works of the devil.
- 651) Hebrews 2:14 - Inasmuch then as the children have partaken of flesh and blood, He Himself likewise shared in the same, that through death He might destroy him who had the power of death, that is, the devil . . .

c. Christ has redeemed us from the power of the DEVIL.



## CHRIST'S HUMILIATION

**152. In what state was Christ when He redeemed us?****Bible passages:**

- 652) Philippians 2:5-8 - Let this mind be in you which was also in Christ Jesus, who, being in the form of God, did not consider it robbery to be equal with God, but made Himself of no reputation (lit. - "emptied Himself"), taking the form of a servant, and coming in the likeness of men. And being found in appearance as a man, He humbled Himself and became obedient to the point of death, even the death of the cross.
- 653) 2 Corinthians 8:9 - For you know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, that though He was rich, yet for your sakes He became poor, that you through His poverty might become rich.

In order to redeem us Jesus HUMBLED Himself, so that He could be put to death to save us from our sins.

**153. What is the "state of humiliation"?****Bible narratives:**

- 654) Luke 1:26-38 - Jesus chose to come to earth as a human being in a lowly manner, when he was conceived in Mary through the Holy Spirit.
- 655) Luke 2:1-21 - The birth of Jesus Christ was in humble and lowly surroundings.

- 656) Matthew 26:57-68 - Jesus suffered at the hands of the temple guard.
- 657) Mark 15:1-20 - Jesus suffered under Pontius Pilate.
- 658) John 19:17-37 - Jesus was crucified by the Roman soldiers at Golgotha ("Skull Place").
- 659) John 19:38-42 - Jesus was buried by Joseph and Nicodemus.

CHRIST'S HUMILIATION is the period of His life when He chose not to use His divine powers fully.

As part of His humiliation Jesus was ". . . conceived by the Holy Ghost, born of the virgin Mary, suffered under Pontius Pilate, was crucified, dead, and buried."

Jesus' becoming a human being was not part of the humiliation. The lowly manner of His coming and His living were.

#### **154. Why did Christ humble Himself?**

##### **Bible passages:**

- 660) 2 Corinthians 8:9 - For you know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, that though He was rich, yet for your sakes He became poor, that you through His poverty might become rich.
- 661) Mark 10:45 - "For even the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give His life a ransom for many."

Christ humbled Himself so that human beings would have a perfect Redeemer and Savior from sin.

## CHRIST'S EXALTATION



#### **155. What is Christ's EXALTATION?**

##### **Bible passages:**

- 662) Philippians 2:9-11 - Therefore God also has highly exalted Him and given Him the name which is above every name, that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of those in heaven, and of those on earth, and of those under the earth, and that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.
- 663) Luke 24:26 - "Ought not the Christ to have suffered these things and to enter into His glory?"

CHRIST'S EXALTATION is that period of His life when He used His divine powers fully.

**156. Which words of the Apostles' Creed describe the exaltation of Jesus?**

Christ "descended into hell; the third day He rose again from the dead; He ascended into heaven and is seated at the right hand of God, the Father almighty, from there He will come to judge the living and the dead."

**157. What is Christ's DESCENT INTO HELL?**

**Bible passages:**

664) 1 Peter 3:19 - . . . by whom also He went and preached to the spirits in prison . . .

665) Colossians 2:15 - Having disarmed principalities and powers, He made a public spectacle of them triumphing over them in it (the cross).

Christ descended into hell to proclaim His victory over the devil.

**158. What is Christ's RESURRECTION from the dead?**

**Bible narratives:**

666) Matthew 28

667) Mark 16

668) Luke 24 The resurrection appearances of Jesus

669) John 20,21

670) Acts 1:4-11

671) 1 Corinthians 15

<p><i>Resurrection:</i> to become alive after being dead</p>
--

These Scriptures record the following resurrection appearances of Jesus:

- 1) to Mary Magdalene,
- 2) to the women,
- 3) to Peter,
- 4) to the Emmaus disciples,
- 5) to 10 disciples on the day He rose,
- 6) to 11 disciples, including Thomas, a week later,
- 7) to 7 disciples at Tiberias (John 21:14 - the "third time."),
- 8) to James and the apostles,
- 9) to the disciples for the Great Commission to preach the Gospel,
- 10) to 500 brethren at one time,
- 11) to the disciples when He ascended into heaven, and
- 12) to Saul (Paul) as the one "born out of due time" (1 Corinthians 15:8).

**Bible passages:**

- 672) 1 Corinthians 15:4 - [Christ] rose again the third day according to the Scriptures . . .
- 673) Acts 2:32 - "This Jesus God has raised up, of which we are all witnesses."

Jesus came back to life the third day after He had been killed.

**159. Of what does the resurrection of Christ assure us?**

**Bible passage:**

- 674) Romans 1:4 - [Christ was] declared to be the Son of God with power, according to the Spirit of holiness, by the resurrection from the dead . . .

- a. Christ's resurrection assures us that Jesus  
IS WHO HE CLAIMED TO BE - the Son of God.

-----

**Bible passages:**

- 675) Romans 4:25 - [Christ] was delivered up because of our offenses, and was raised again because of our justification.
- 676) 1 Corinthians 15:17 - And if Christ is not risen, your faith is futile; you are still in your sins.

- b. Christ's resurrection assures us that OUR SINS ARE FORGIVEN.

-----

**Bible passages:**

- 677) John 14:19 - "Because I live, you will live also."
- 678) John 11:25,26 - "I am the resurrection and the life. He who believes in Me, though he may die, he shall live. And whoever lives and believes in Me shall never die."

- c. Christ's resurrection assures us that WE TOO  
SHALL BE RAISED.

**Bible passage:**

679) Psalm 16:10 - For You will not leave my soul in Sheol, nor will You allow Your Holy One to see corruption.

d. Christ's resurrection assures us that GOD'S WORD IS TRUE. The prophecies regarding Christ's life, death, and resurrection came true.

*Ascend:* to go up

**160. What is Christ's ASCENSION into heaven?**

**Bible narrative:**

680) Acts 1:9-11 - Jesus ascended into heaven while His disciples watched.

**Bible passages:**

681) Luke 24:50,51 - And He led them out as far as Bethany, and He lifted up His hands and blessed them. Now it came to pass, while He blessed them, that He was parted from them and carried up into heaven.

682) Acts 1:9 - Now when He had spoken these things, while they watched, He was taken up, and a cloud received Him out of their sight.

Forty days after His resurrection Jesus went up into heaven. He withdrew His visible presence from His disciples. They could not see Him any more. Jesus still has His body even now in heaven.

**161. Of what does the ascension of Christ assure us?**

**Bible passage:**

683) John 14:2,3 - "In My Father's house are many mansions; if it were not so, I would have told you. I go to prepare a place for you. And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again and receive you to Myself; that where I am, there you may be also."

When Christ ascended into heaven, He went to prepare a place for us.

## **162. What is Christ's SITTING AT THE RIGHT HAND OF GOD THE FATHER?**

### **Bible passages:**

- 684) Ephesians 1:20-22 - [God] raised [Christ] from the dead and seated Him at His right hand in the heavenly places, far above all principality and power . . . And He put all things under His feet, and gave Him to be head over all things to the church . . .
- 685) Matthew 28:18 - "All authority has been given to Me in heaven and on earth."

Christ's sitting at the right hand of God means that He rules everything for the benefit of His people.

God is a spirit; He does not have a body which has a right hand. Sitting at one's right hand is a picture of a position of honor and authority.

Christ rules at God's right hand as our Prophet, High Priest, and King.

## **163. What will happen before Christ comes to JUDGE THE LIVING AND THE DEAD?**

### **Bible narratives:**

- 686) Matthew 24:36-51 - Jesus gave indicators that He is coming at the end of the world. He did not say which day it would be.
- 687) 2 Thessalonians 2:1-12 - Before the end of the world the Antichrist must be revealed.

- a. Jesus said there would be indications ("signs") of the end of the world. Everything He mentioned has already happened.

-----

### **Bible narrative:**

- 688) Matthew 24:36-39 - Jesus told what life would be like when He returns at the end of the world.
- b. Jesus will return when life on earth is in its usual daily activities.

## 164. What is Christ going to do when He comes?

### Bible narrative:

689) Matthew 25:31-46 - Jesus told about His coming at the end of the world to judge all people. Jesus will show who the believers are by the fruits of their faith. He will show who the unbelievers are by their lack of such fruits.

### Bible passage:

690) Acts 17:31 - “. . . He has appointed a day on which He will judge the world in righteousness by the Man whom He has ordained. He has given assurance of this to all by raising Him from the dead.”

On the last day Christ will come in glory to judge all mankind.

## 165. When will Christ return?

### Bible passages:

691) Matthew 24:36 - “But of that day and hour no one knows, no, not even the angels of heaven, but My Father only.”

692) 2 Peter 3:10 - But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night, in which the heavens will pass away with a great noise, and the elements will melt with fervent heat; both the earth and the works that are in it will be burned up.

No one knows the date when Christ will return for judging the world.

## 166. Since we do not know the date when Christ is coming, how should we live while we are waiting?

### Bible narrative:

693) Matthew 25:1-13 - Jesus told a parable to show that we should be ready for His coming at all times.

*Parable:* earthly story with a heavenly meaning

### Bible passage:

694) Matthew 24:44 - “Therefore you also be ready, for the Son of Man is coming at an hour when you do not expect Him.”

Christ wants us to be ready for His coming at all times. This means that we believe in Him as our Savior and serve Him as our Lord until He comes.



## **167. What will be the result of Christ's judgment?**

### **Bible narrative:**

695) Matthew 25:31-46 - Jesus will separate the believers from the unbelievers as a shepherd separates sheep and goats. He will send the unbelievers to hell and bring the believers to their eternal inheritance.

### **Bible passages:**

696) John 12:48 - ". . . the word that I have spoken will judge him in the last day."

697) Mark 16:16 - "He who believes and is baptized will be saved; but he who does not believe will be condemned."

Those who believe in Jesus will go to heaven. Those who do not believe will go to hell.

## THE PURPOSE OF REDEMPTION



## **168. For what purpose did Christ redeem us?**

### **Bible passages:**

698) 1 Corinthians 6:19,20 - ". . . do you not know that your body is the temple of the Holy Spirit who is in you, whom you have from God, and you are not your own? For you were bought at a price; therefore glorify God in your body and in your spirit, which are God's.

699) Romans 6:20,22 - For when you were slaves of sin, you were free in regard to righteousness . . . But now having been set free from sin, and having become slaves of God, you have your fruit to holiness, and the end, everlasting life.

700) Titus 2:14 - [Christ] gave Himself for us, that He might redeem us from every lawless deed and purify for Himself His own special people, zealous of good works.

a. Christ redeemed us so that we are HIS OWN.

**Bible passages:**

- 701) 2 Corinthians 5:15 - [Christ] died for all, that those who live should live no longer for themselves, but for Him who died for them and rose again.
- 702) 1 Peter 2:24 - [Christ] Himself bore our sins in His own body on the tree, that we, having died to sins, might live for righteousness . . .

b. Christ redeemed us so that we LIVE UNDER HIM.

-----

**Bible passages:**

- 703) Luke 1:74,75 - “. . . to grant us that we, being delivered from the hand of our enemies, might serve Him without fear, in holiness and righteousness before Him all the days of our life.”
- 704) Psalm 100:1,2 - Make a joyful shout to the LORD, all you lands! Serve the LORD with gladness; come before His presence with singing.
- 705) Romans 12:1 - I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that you present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable to God, which is your reasonable service.
- 706) Colossians 3:17 - And whatever you do in word or deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ, giving thanks to God the Father through Him.

c. Christ redeemed us so that we SERVE HIM IN ETERNAL RIGHTEOUSNESS, HOLINESS, AND BLESSEDNESS.

<p><b><i>Righteousness:</i></b> what is right in God's eyes</p> <p><b><i>Holiness:</i></b> without sin; hating sin</p> <p><b><i>Blessedness:</i></b> a spirit of thanksgiving</p>
---

# COMING TO FAITH

## 169. How do the benefits of Christ's redemption become ours?

### Bible passages:

- 707) Acts 16:30,31 - "Sirs, what must I do to be saved?"  
So they (Paul and his companions) said, "Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and you will be saved, you and your household."
- 708) John 3:16 - "For God so loved the world that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him should not perish but have everlasting life."
- 709) Mark 1:15 - "The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is at hand. Repent, and believe in the gospel."

The benefits of Christ's redemption become ours through faith. To "have faith" and to "believe" mean exactly the same thing. (See also question 114.)

**Repent:** "change of mind." Usually

- 1) sorrow for sins and
- 2) faith in Jesus for the forgiveness of sins. It also involves a turning away from sin. Here it refers to the sorrow for sins.

## 170. What is our natural spiritual condition?

### Bible passages:

- 710) Acts 26:18 - ". . . to open their eyes and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan to God . . ."
- 711) Ephesians 2:1,3 - You . . . were dead in trespasses and sins . . . and were by nature children of wrath, just as the others.
- 712) Romans 8:7 - Because the carnal mind is enmity against God . . .

In our natural condition we human beings are blind to God, spiritually dead in our sins, and hate God.

**Carnal:** fleshly; the sinful nature

**Enmity:** hatred - is hostile to

## 171. What effect does our sinful nature have on our receiving the benefits of Christ's redemption?

### Bible passages:

- 713) 1 Corinthians 2:14 - But the natural man does not receive the things of the Spirit of God, for they are foolishness to him; nor can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned.
- 714) 1 Corinthians 12:3 - . . . no one can say that Jesus is Lord except by the Holy Spirit.
- 715) Ephesians 2:8,9 - For by grace you have been saved through faith, and that not of yourselves, it is the gift of God, not of works, lest anyone should boast.

**Discern:** to see, recognize, and understand

716) Psalm 82:5 - [The wicked] do not know, nor do they understand; they walk about in darkness . . .

717) John 15:16 - "You did not choose Me, but I chose you . . ."

Because of our sinful nature we cannot by our own thinking and effort believe in Jesus Christ, our Lord, nor come to Him.

## **172. How is a person brought to faith in Jesus Christ?**

### **Bible passages:**

718) 1 Corinthians 12:3 - . . . no one can say that Jesus is Lord except by the Holy Spirit.

719) Romans 5:5 - . . . the love of God has been poured out in our hearts by the Holy Spirit who was given to us.

720) John 14:26 - But the Helper, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in My name, He will teach you all things, and bring to your remembrance all things that I said to you.

721) John 16:13 - . . . when He, the Spirit of truth, has come, He will guide you into all truth . . .

A person is brought to faith in Jesus Christ through the work of the Holy Spirit.



***(About Sanctification)***

I believe in the Holy Spirit; the Holy Christian Church, the communion of saints; the forgiveness of sins; the resurrection of the body; and the life everlasting.  
Amen.

***What does this mean?***

I believe that I cannot by my own reason or strength believe in Jesus Christ, my Lord, or come to Him.

But the Holy Spirit has called me by the Gospel, enlightened me with His gifts, sanctified, and kept me in true faith.

In the same way He calls, gathers, enlightens, and sanctifies the whole Christian Church on earth and keeps it with Jesus Christ in the one true faith.

In this Christian Church He daily and richly forgives all sins to me and all believers.

On the Last Day He will raise me and all the dead and give to me and all believers in Christ eternal life.

This is most certainly true.

THE HOLY SPIRIT



**173. Who is the Holy Spirit?**

**Bible passages:**

- 722) Matthew 28:19 - "Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit . . ."
- 723) 2 Corinthians 13:14 - The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Spirit be with you.

The Holy Spirit is the third person of the Triune God - true God with the Father and the Son.

## **174. How do we know that the Holy Spirit is true God?**

### **Bible passages:**

724) Acts 5:3,4 - "Ananias, why has Satan filled your heart to lie to the Holy Spirit? . . . You have not lied to men but to God."

725) 1 Corinthians 3:16 - Do you not know that you are the temple of God and that the Spirit of God dwells in you?

- a. The Bible says that the Holy Spirit is God. (Divine names)

-----

### **Bible passages:**

726) Psalm 139:7,8 - Where can I go from Your Spirit? Or where can I flee from Your presence? If I ascend into heaven, You are there; if I make my bed in hell, behold, You are there. (Omnipresence)

727) 1 Corinthians 2:10 - But God has revealed them to us through His Spirit. For the Spirit searches all things, yes, the deep things of God. (Omniscience)

728) Hebrews 9:14 - . . . how much shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered Himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God? (Eternal)

- b. The Holy Spirit has divine qualities. (Divine attributes)

-----

### **Bible passages:**

729) Genesis 1:2 - And the Spirit of God was hovering over the face of the waters. (Creation)

730) Genesis 1:26 - Then God said, "Let Us make man in Our image . . ." (Creation of Man)

731) Titus 3:5 - . . . according to His mercy He saved us, by the washing of regeneration and renewing of the Holy Spirit. (Creation of Faith)

- c. The Holy Spirit does works only God could do. (Divine works)

**Bible passage:**

732) 1 Peter 4:14 - . . . for the Spirit of glory and of God rests upon you.

d. The Holy Spirit receives our praise.  
(Divine honor and glory)



## THE WORK OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

### 175. What is the work of the Holy Spirit called?

**Bible passages:**

733) 1 Corinthians 6:11 - But you were washed, but you were sanctified, but you were justified in the name of the Lord Jesus and by the Spirit of our God.

734) 1 Corinthians 1:2 - To the church of God which is at Corinth, to those who are sanctified in Christ Jesus, called to be saints . . .

735) 2 Thessalonians 2:13 - . . . God from the beginning chose you for salvation through sanctification by the Spirit and belief in the truth . . .

The work of the Holy Spirit is called SANCTIFICATION.

Sometimes the Bible uses the word "sanctification" in a WIDE SENSE. It then refers to everything the Holy Spirit does to create faith and give us the benefits of Christ's redemption. (For sanctification in the narrow sense see question 183.)

*Sanctify:* to "set apart" for holy, sinless purposes; to make holy

### 176. How does the Holy Spirit do His work?

**Bible narratives:**

736) Acts 2 - Many believed when Peter preached the Word on Pentecost.

737) Acts 8:26-38 - The man from Ethiopia heard Philip preach the gospel. He was later baptized.

738) 1 Corinthians 11:23-29 - Christ gives forgiveness of sins in the Sacrament of Holy Communion.

**Bible passages:**

- 739) Romans 10:17 - So then faith comes by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.
- 740) 2 Timothy 3:15 - . . . from childhood you have known the Holy Scriptures, which are able to make you wise for salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.

The Holy Spirit sanctifies us through the MEANS OF GRACE. The Means of Grace is the tool the Holy Spirit uses to create faith and keep people in faith. The Means of Grace is the GOSPEL in Word and Sacrament.

**Sacrament:**  
sacred act. The Sacraments are Holy Baptism and Holy Communion.

**B E C O M I N G   A   B E L I E V E R***(Called by the Gospel)***177. For what purpose does the Spirit use the gospel?****Bible narrative:**

- 741) Acts 9:1-22 - Saul was called to be a follower of Jesus.

**Bible passages:**

- 742) 1 Corinthians 1:9 - God is faithful, by whom you were called into the fellowship of His Son, Jesus Christ our Lord.
- 743) 2 Timothy 1:9 - . . . [God] has saved us and called us with a holy calling, not according to our works, but according to His own purpose and grace which was given to us in Christ Jesus before time began.

The Holy Spirit uses the gospel to CALL US TO FAITH in Jesus Christ.

**178. In what ways does the Bible describe the work of the Holy Spirit when He makes a believer from an unbeliever?****Bible passages:**

- 744) Acts 11:21 - And the hand of the Lord was with them, and a great number believed and turned to the Lord.
- 745) Matthew 18:3 - "Assuredly, I say to you, unless you are converted and become as little children, you will by no means enter the kingdom of heaven."
- 746) 1 Peter 2:25 - For you were like sheep going astray, but have now returned to the Shepherd and Overseer of your souls.



747) Psalm 51:13 - Then I will teach transgressors Your ways, and sinners shall be converted to You.

- a. The Bible calls the Spirit's work of making a believer out of an unbeliever CONVERSION.

**Convert:** to turn (180°)

**Bible narrative:**

748) John 3:1-16 - Jesus explained rebirth to Nicodemus.

**Bible passages:**

749) 1 Peter 1:3 - Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who according to His abundant mercy has begotten us again to a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead . . .

750) 1 Peter 1:23 - . . . having been born again, not of corruptible seed but incorruptible, through the word of God which lives and abides forever . . .

751) John 3:3 - Jesus answered and said to him, "Most assuredly, I say to you, unless one is born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God."

752) Titus 3:5 - [God] saved us, through the washing of regeneration and renewing of the Holy Spirit . . .

- b. The Bible calls the Spirit's work of making a believer from an unbeliever REGENERATION.

**Regeneration:** to be born again; rebirth

-----

**Bible passages:**

753) Ephesians 2:1- And you He made alive, who were dead in trespasses and sins . . .

754) Colossians 2:13 - And you, being dead in your trespasses and the uncircumcision of your flesh, He has made alive together with Him, having forgiven you all trespasses.

- c. The Bible calls the Spirit's work of making a believer out of an unbeliever MAKING ALIVE (Quickening).

**179. Why do many who hear the gospel not believe it?**

**Bible passages:**

755) 2 Peter 3:9 - The Lord is . . . not willing that any should perish but that all should come to repentance.

756) 1 Timothy 2:3,4 - . . . God our Savior . . . desires all men to be saved and to come to the knowledge of the truth.

a. It is not God's fault if those who hear the gospel don't believe it. God wants everyone to be saved.

-----

**Bible passages:**

757) Matthew 23:37 - "O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, the one who kills the prophets and stones those who are sent to her! How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a hen gathers her chicks under her wings, but you were not willing!"

758) Acts 7:51 - You stiff-necked and uncircumcised in heart and ears! You always resist the Holy Spirit; as your fathers did, so do you.

b. If those who hear the gospel don't believe, it is their own fault.

**180. To whose credit alone is it when people who hear the gospel believe in Jesus as their Savior from sin?**

**Bible passages:**

759) Ephesians 2:8,9 - For by grace you have been saved through faith, and that not of yourselves, it is the gift of God, not of works, lest anyone should boast.

760) Philippians 2:13 - . . . for it is God who works in you both to will and to do for His good pleasure.

761) 1 Corinthians 12:3 - . . . no one can say that Jesus is Lord except by the Holy Spirit.

762) Romans 9:16 - So then it is not of him who wills, nor of him who runs, but of God who shows mercy.

God alone receives all the credit and glory when a person is brought to faith in Jesus Christ.

ENLIGHTENED WITH HIS GIFTS

**181. What else does the Holy Spirit do?**

**Bible passages:**

763) John 8:12 - [Jesus said], "I am the light of the world. He who follows Me shall not walk in darkness, but have the light of life."

764) 2 Corinthians 4:4,5 - . . . whose minds the god of this age has blinded, who do not believe, lest the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine on them . . . For it is God who commanded light to shine out of darkness who has shone in our hearts to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ.

765) Ephesians 5:8 - For you were once darkness, but now you are light in the Lord. Walk as children of light . . .

The Holy Spirit has also enlightened us with His gifts - that is,

- 1) He brought us from the darkness of sin to the light of faith, and
- 2) He causes us to see the special gifts which God gives to His people.

*Enlighten:* to "turn the light on," to cause one to recognize and know

## **182. What are some of these gifts from the Holy Spirit?**

### **Bible narrative:**

766) 1 Corinthians 12:1-31 - The apostle Paul described various gifts of the Holy Spirit.

### **Bible passages:**

767) John 17:3 - "And this is eternal life, that they may know You, the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom You have sent." (Spiritual knowledge - the knowledge of our Savior from sin)

768) Romans 5:1 - Therefore, having been justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ. (The assurance of spiritual peace, which results from the forgiveness of sins)

769) Philippians 4:7 - . . . and the peace of God, which surpasses all understanding, will guard your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus. (Spiritual peace)

770) Romans 8:16 - The Spirit Himself bears witness with our spirit that we are children of God . . . (The witness that we are God's children)

771) Isaiah 51:12 - I, even I, am He who comforts you. Who are you that you should be afraid of a man who will die, and of the son of man who will be made like grass? (Comfort in all our troubles)

772) James 1:6 - But let him ask in faith, with no doubting, for he who doubts is like a wave of the sea driven and tossed by the wind. (Confidence when we pray)

- 773) Philippians 4:4 - Rejoice in the Lord always. Again I will say, rejoice! (The joy of being a believer)
- 774) Titus 2:13 - . . . looking for the blessed hope and glorious appearing of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ . . . (The hope of eternal life)

## THE FRUITS OF FAITH

*(Sanctified)*

### **183. What else does the Holy Spirit work in us through the gospel?**

**Bible narratives:**

- 775) 2 Corinthians 6:14-18 - Believers are not the same as unbelievers.
- 776) Romans 6:1-23 - The work of the Spirit turns us from being slaves of sin to being slaves of God.

**Bible passages:**

- 777) Ephesians 2:10 - For we are His workmanship, created in Christ Jesus for good works, which God prepared beforehand that we should walk in them.
- 778) 1 Thessalonians 4:3 - For this is the will of God, your sanctification . . .
- 779) 1 Thessalonians 4:7 - For God did not call us to uncleanness, but in holiness.
- 780) Titus 2:14 - [Christ] gave Himself for us, that He might redeem us from every lawless deed and purify for Himself His own special people, zealous for good works.

The Holy Spirit sets us apart from sin and evil in our own lives and behavior.

This is sometimes called sanctification in a NARROW SENSE. It is everything the Spirit does to produce in us the fruits of faith. These fruits of faith are sometimes called “good works” in the Bible.

### **184. What is a good work in the sight of God?**

**Bible passages:**

- 781) Hebrews 11:6 - But without faith it is impossible to please [God].
- 782) John 15:5 - “I am the vine, you are the branches. He who abides in Me, and I in him, bears much fruit; for without Me you can do nothing.”

783) Ephesians 2:10 - For we are His workmanship created in Christ Jesus for good works, which God prepared beforehand that we should walk in them.

784) Galatians 2:20 - I have been crucified with Christ; it is no longer I who live, but Christ lives in me; and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave Himself for me.

785) Colossians 3:17 - And whatever you do in word or deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God the Father through Him.

- a. A good work in the sight of God is one which FLOWS FROM FAITH in Christ. It is a fruit of faith. It is the result of loving Jesus.

-----

**Bible narrative:**

786) Romans 13:8-10 - When we love other people we are doing what our God wants us to do. It is a "debt of love."

**Bible passages:**

787) John 14:15 - "If you love Me, keep My commandments."

788) 1 John 3:23 - And this is His commandment: that we should believe on the name of His Son Jesus Christ and love one another, as He gave us commandment.

789) Romans 12:2 - And do not be conformed to this world, but be transformed by the renewing of your mind, that you may prove what is that good and acceptable and perfect will of God.

790) Psalm 119:105 - Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light to my path.

- b. A good work in the sight of God is one which CONFORMS TO GOD'S WILL.

**185. Why are only these works called "good?"**

**Bible passages:**

791) Ephesians 2:8,9 - For by grace you have been saved through faith, and that not of yourselves; it is the gift of God, not of works, lest anyone should boast.

792) Romans 3:28 - Therefore we conclude that a man is justified by faith apart from the deeds of the law.

793) Hebrews 11:6 - But without faith it is impossible to please [God].

- a. A person who doesn't have faith in Jesus cannot do anything that will please God. Good works cannot save anyone!

-----

**Bible passages:**

794) Philippians 2:13 - . . . for it is God who works in you both to will and to do for His good pleasure.

795) Romans 9:16 - So then it is not of him who wills, nor of him who runs, but of God who shows mercy.

796) John 15:5 - "I am the vine, you are the branches. He who abides in Me, and I in him, bears much fruit; for without Me you can do nothing."

797) Psalm 147:11 - The LORD takes pleasure in those who fear Him, in those who hope in His mercy.

- b. Our works are good only because God considers them that way. He delights to see people who believe in Him do what He says out of love for their Savior.

## KEPT IN THE TRUE FAITH

### **186. What enemies are trying to destroy our faith?**

**Bible passages:**

798) Revelation 12:9 - So the great dragon was cast out, that serpent of old, called the Devil and Satan, who deceives the whole world . . .

799) 1 Peter 5:8 - Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil walks about like a roaring lion, seeking whom he may devour.

800) 2 Corinthians 11:3 - But I fear, lest somehow, as the serpent deceived Eve by his craftiness, so your minds may be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ.

- a. The DEVIL is trying to destroy our faith.

**Bible passages:**

- 801) Romans 12:2 - And do not be conformed to this world . . .
- 802) 1 John 2:15 - Do not love the world or the things in the world. If anyone loves the world, the love of the Father is not in him.

b. The sinful WORLD is trying to destroy our faith.

-----

**Bible passages:**

- 803) Romans 7:18 - For I know that in me (that is, in my flesh) nothing good dwells . . .
- 804) Galatians 5:17 - For the flesh lusts against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh; and these are contrary to one another, so that you do not do the things you wish.

c. Our own SINFUL NATURE (“FLESH”) is trying to destroy our faith.

**187. How does the Holy Spirit keep us in faith?**

**Bible passages:**

- 805) 1 Peter 5:10 - But may the God of all grace, who called us to His eternal glory by Christ Jesus, after you have suffered a while, perfect, establish, strengthen, and settle you.
- 806) 1 Peter 1:5 - [You] are kept by the power of God through faith for salvation ready to be revealed in the last time.
- 807) Luke 22:32 - “But I have prayed for you, that your faith should not fail . . .”
- 808) 1 Corinthians 10:13 - No temptation has overtaken you except such as is common to man; but God is faithful, who will not allow you to be tempted beyond what you are able, but with the temptation will also make the way of escape, that you may be able to bear it.

The Holy Spirit uses the gospel to strengthen us so we do not lose our faith or give in to temptation.



# THE HOLY CHRISTIAN CHURCH

*(The Communion of Saints)*

## 188. What is the Holy Christian Church?

### Bible passages:

- 809) Acts 2:47 - And the Lord added to the church daily those who were being saved.
- 810) 1 Corinthians 1:2 - To the church of God which is at Corinth, to those who are sanctified in Christ Jesus, called to be saints, with all who in every place call on the name of Jesus Christ our Lord . . .
- 811) Acts 5:14 - And believers were increasingly added to the Lord, multitudes of both men and women.
- 812) Ephesians 5:23,25 - . . . Christ is head of the church . . . Christ also loved the church and gave Himself for it . . .

**Church:** group, assembly; in Greek: the “group called out.” The word “church” is sometimes used to describe a building, an organization, or worship itself. God uses the word CHURCH to refer to those who believe in Jesus

The Holy Christian Church is the communion of saints - that is, the GROUP OF ALL WHO BELIEVE in Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of sins.

**Communion:** the coming together into one; union

**Saints:** those who have been set apart by God and dedicated to Him

## 189. What are some other ways the Bible talks about the group of believers?

### Bible passages:

- 813) Psalm 46:4 - There is a river whose streams shall make glad the CITY OF GOD . . .
- 814) 1 Peter 2:10 - . . . who once were not a people but are now the PEOPLE OF GOD . . .
- 815) Hebrews 12:22,23 - But you have come to MOUNT ZION and to the city of the living God, the HEAVENLY JERUSALEM, to an innumerable company of angels, to the general assembly and church of the firstborn who are registered in heaven, to God the Judge of all . . .
- 816) Revelation 21:2 - Then I, John, saw the holy city, New Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God, prepared as a BRIDE adorned for her husband.
- 817) Ephesians 1:22,23 - And He put all things under His feet, and gave Him to be head over all things to the church, which is HIS BODY, the fullness of Him who fills all in all.



## **190. Why is this Church called “holy” and a group of “saints”?**

### **Bible passages:**

- 818) 1 Corinthians 1:2 - To the church of God . . . sanctified in Christ Jesus, called to be saints.
- 819) 1 Peter 2:9 - But you are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, His own special people . . .
- 820) Ephesians 5:25-27 - . . . Christ also loved the church and gave Himself for it, that He might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word that He might present it to Himself a glorious church, not having spot or wrinkle or any such thing, but that it should be holy and without blemish.

The Church is called “holy” and a group of “saints” because the Holy Spirit has done His work of setting apart all its members, bringing them to faith in Jesus Christ.

## **191. Why is this Church called “Christian”?**

### **Bible passages:**

- 821) 1 Corinthians 3:11 - For no other foundation can anyone lay than that which is laid, which is Jesus Christ.
- 822) Acts 11:21,26 - . . . and a great number believed and turned to the Lord . . . And the disciples were first called Christians at Antioch.
- 823) Ephesians 2:19,20 - Now, therefore, you are no longer strangers and foreigners, but fellow citizens with the saints and members of the household of God, having been built on the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ Himself being the chief cornerstone . . .

The Church is called “Christian” because all of its members believe in Christ for the forgiveness of their sins.

## **192. Why is this Church called a “communion” of saints?**

### **Bible passages:**

- 824) John 10:16 - “And other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they will hear My voice; and there will be one flock and one shepherd.”
- 825) 1 Corinthians 12:13 - For by one Spirit we were all baptized into one body - whether Jews or Greeks, whether slaves or free - and have all been made to drink into one Spirit.

826) Ephesians 4:4-6 - There is one body and one Spirit, just as you were called in one hope of your calling; one Lord, one faith, one baptism, one God and Father of all, who is above all and through all, and in you all.

827) Galatians 3:28 - There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free, there is neither male nor female, for you are all one in Christ Jesus.

The Church is called the “communion” of saints because they together make up the ONE Holy Christian Church. It is the gathering of all believers in Christ.

### **193. Where is this Holy Christian Church to be found?**

#### **Bible narrative:**

828) 1 Kings 19:9-18 - Elijah thought he was the only believer left. God told him there were still 7,000 believers in Israel.

#### **Bible passages:**

829) 1 Samuel 16:7 - “For the LORD does not see as a man sees; for man looks at the outward appearance, but the Lord looks at the heart.”

830) 2 Timothy 2:19 - “The Lord knows those who are His . . .”

- a. Since human beings cannot see faith in another’s heart, we cannot positively identify who the believers are. We are sure of the existence of the Church because God tells us it exists.

-----

#### **Bible passages:**

831) Isaiah 55:10,11 - “For as the rain comes down, and the snow from heaven, and do not return there, but water the earth, and make it bring forth and bud . . . So shall My word be that goes forth from My mouth; it shall not return to Me void, but it shall accomplish what I please, and it shall prosper in the thing for which I sent it.”

832) Matthew 28:19-20 - “Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all things that I have commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age.”

833) Romans 10:17 - So then faith comes by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.

834) Matthew 18:20 - "For where two or three are gathered together in My name, I am there in the midst of them."

b. The Church is found on earth wherever the gospel is preached and the sacraments used. It is the Gospel in Word and Sacrament which makes believers. Believers are the Holy Christian Church.

The Gospel in Word and Sacraments are sometimes called the MARKS OF THE CHURCH, because they identify where the believers can be found. The Holy Spirit will make believers wherever these are used.

## CHURCH ORGANIZATIONS

(Congregations )

### 194. In what other way is the word "church" used in the Bible?

#### Bible narratives:

835) Acts 15:41; 16:5 - Congregations in various cities were called churches.

836) Revelation 2 and 3 - Seven congregations receive special letters from the Savior.

#### Bible passages:

837) Acts 13:1 - Now in the church that was at Antioch . . .

838) Acts 14:23 - So when they had appointed elders in every church . . .

**Congregation:** a group of people, usually gathered for a religious purpose.

The word "church" also refers to a congregation gathered in one place.

<b>Church</b>	<b>church(es)</b>
Holy Christian	Local congregations
One	Many
Invisible	Visible
Faith	Confession of faith
Believers	Believers (among hypocrites)
An organism (with Christ as Head)	Organizations

The Holy Christian Church is ALL WHO BELIEVE as God sees them; churches are made up of people who SAY THEY BELIEVE as men see them.

**195. What do Christians do together as a “church” or congregation?**

**Bible passages:**

- 839) Acts 2:42 - And they continued steadfastly in the apostles’ doctrine and fellowship, and in the breaking of bread, and in prayers.
- 840) Acts 2:46,47 - So continuing daily with one accord in the temple, and breaking bread from house to house, they ate their food with gladness and simplicity of heart, praising God and having favor with all the people.
- 841) Acts 4:32 - Now the multitude of those who believed were of one heart and one soul; neither did anyone say that any of the things he possessed was his own, but they had all things in common.
- 842) John 8:31 - “If you abide in My word, you are My disciples indeed. And you shall know the truth and the truth shall make you free.”

In a “church” or congregation Christians share their faith, fellowship with one another, and love each other.

**196. What other types of “church” organizations are there?**

Groups of congregations are called a denomination or a synod.

C H U R C H F E L L O W S H I P

**197. What does God want us to do with those who teach the Word of God correctly?**

**Bible passages:**

- 843) 1 John 1:3 - . . . that which we have seen and heard we declare to you, that you also may have fellowship with us; and truly our fellowship is with the Father and with His Son Jesus Christ.

<p><i>Fellowship:</i> gathering of those who have something in common; a “communion”</p>
--

God wants us to join in fellowship with those who share our confession of faith.

## **198. With whom should we be in fellowship?**

### **Bible passages:**

- 844) 1 Corinthians 1:10 - Now I plead with you, brethren, by the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that you all speak the same thing, and that there be no divisions among you, but that you be perfectly joined together in the same mind and in the same judgment.
- 845) 2 Corinthians 13:11 - Be of good comfort, be of one mind, live in peace; and the God of love and peace will be with you.
- 846) 1 Thessalonians 5:11 - Therefore comfort each other and edify one another, just as you also are doing.
- 847) Amos 3:3 - Can two walk together unless they are agreed?

God wants us to seek a fellowship with those who teach the Word of God correctly.

This type of gathering together is often called CHURCH FELLOWSHIP. Church fellowship is common worship and church work among those who agree on what the Bible teaches. (Orthodox -- straight teaching)

## **199. What type of activities are involved in CHURCH FELLOWSHIP?**

### **Bible passages:**

- 848) Hebrews 10:24,25 - And let us consider one another in order to stir up love and good works, not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together as is the manner of some, but exhorting one another, and so much the more as you see the Day approaching.
- 849) Colossians 3:16 - Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom, teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord.

- a. People who are in fellowship join together in WORSHIP.

-----

### **Bible passages:**

- 850) Acts 2:42 - And they continued steadfastly in the apostles' doctrine and fellowship, in the breaking of bread, and in prayers.

- 851) Acts 1:14 - These all continued with one accord in prayer . . .
- 852) Matthew 18:19 - Again I say to you that if two of you agree on earth concerning anything that they ask, it will be done for them by My Father in heaven.

b. People who are in fellowship join in PRAYER.

**Bible passages:**

- 853) 1 Thessalonians 4:18 - Therefore comfort one another with these words.
- 854) 1 Thessalonians 5:11 - Therefore comfort each other and edify one another, just as you also are doing.

c. Those who are in fellowship use the Word of God for their MUTUAL STRENGTH and COMFORT.

-----

**Bible passages:**

- 855) Psalm 78:4 - We will not hide them from their children, telling to the generation to come the praises of the LORD, and His strength and His wonderful works that He has done.
- 856) Deuteronomy 6:6,7 - "And these words which I command you today shall be in your heart; you shall teach them diligently to your children . . ."
- 857) John 21:15 - "Feed my lambs."
- 858) 2 Timothy 3:15 - . . . and that from childhood you have known the Holy Scriptures, which are able to make you wise for salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.

d. Those who are in fellowship actively promote CHRISTIAN EDUCATION.

-----

**Bible passages:**

- 859) Acts 1:8 - ". . . you shall be witnesses to Me in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the end of the earth."
- 860) Matthew 28:19-20 - "Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all things that I have commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age."

861) 1 Peter 3:15 - But sanctify the Lord God in your hearts, and always be ready to give a defense to everyone who asks you a reason for the hope that is in you, with meekness and fear . . .

- e. Those who are in fellowship actively promote MISSION WORK, so that others hear that Christ has forgiven their sins also.

## THE CHURCH AS TEACHER

### **200. What role and mission has Christ given to His people - the Church - while they are in the world?**

#### **Bible passages:**

- 862) Matthew 28:18-20 - Then Jesus came and spoke to them, saying, "All authority has been given to Me in heaven and on earth. Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all things that I have commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age."
- 863) Acts 20:27,28 - "For I have not shunned to declare to you the whole counsel of God. Therefore take heed to yourselves and to all the flock, among which the Holy Spirit has made you overseers, to shepherd the church of God which He purchased with His own blood."
- 864) Acts 8:4 - Therefore those who were scattered went everywhere preaching the word.
- 865) 2 Timothy 4:2 - Preach the word!

Christ has given His Church the mission of preaching His Word - especially the gospel - throughout the world.

### **201. How has Satan interfered with this mission of Christ's people?**

#### **Bible passages:**

- 866) Jeremiah 23:31 - "Behold, I am against the prophets," says the LORD, "who use their tongues and say, 'He says.'"
- 867) Matthew 15:9 - "And in vain they worship Me, teaching as doctrines the commandments of men."
- 868) Galatians 3:1 - O foolish Galatians! Who has bewitched you that you should not obey the truth, before whose eyes Jesus Christ was clearly portrayed among you as crucified?

- 869) Galatians 2:4 - But this occurred because of false brethren secretly brought in (who came in by stealth to spy out our liberty which we have in Christ Jesus . . .)
- 870) Matthew 7:15 - "Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous wolves."
- 871) 2 Peter 2:1 - But there were also false prophets among the people, even as there will be false teachers among you, who will secretly bring in destructive heresies, even denying the Lord who bought them . . .

Satan has caused people to preach errors. These people are called false prophets and false teachers. (Heterodox - other teaching; false teaching)

## **202. What does God want us to do when people teach things contrary to the His Word?**

### **Bible passages:**

- 872) 1 John 4:1 - Beloved, do not believe every spirit, but test the spirits, whether they are of God; because many false prophets have gone out into the world.
- 873) Romans 16:17 - Now I urge you, brethren, note those who cause divisions and offenses, contrary to the doctrine which you learned, and avoid them.
- 874) 2 Corinthians 6:14-18 - Do not be unequally yoked together with unbelievers . . . What part has a believer with an unbeliever? And what agreement has the temple of God with idols? For you are the temple of the living God . . . Therefore, "Come out from among them and be separate, says the Lord. Do not touch what is unclean, . . . I will be a Father to you, and you shall be My sons and daughters, says the LORD Almighty."

The Lord wants us to end fellowship with false teachers and those who support them.

Some people stay in fellowship when they do not agree with one another in what the Bible teaches. This is sometimes called RELIGIOUS UNIONISM.



### **203. Why does God want us to separate from those who teach the Word incorrectly?**

#### **Bible passage:**

875) Psalm 119:103-105 - How sweet are Your words to my taste, sweeter than honey to my mouth! Through Your precepts I get understanding; therefore I hate every false way. Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light to my path.

- a. Out of love for the truth of His Word God wants us to separate from those who teach incorrectly.

-----

#### **Bible passages:**

876) 2 Corinthians 7:1 - Therefore having these promises, beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God..

877) Romans 16:17,18 - Now I urge you, brethren, note those who cause divisions and offenses, contrary to the doctrine which you learned, and avoid them. For those who are such do not serve our Lord Jesus Christ, but their own belly, and by smooth words and flattering speech deceive the hearts of the simple.

878) 2 Timothy 2:17,18 - And their message will spread like cancer, Hymenaeus and Philetus are of this sort, who have strayed concerning the truth . . .

879) 2 Peter 2:1 - But there were also false prophets among the people, even as there will be false teachers among you, who will secretly bring in destructive heresies, even denying the Lord who bought them, and bring on themselves swift destruction.

- b. God wants us to separate from those who teach incorrectly so we will not be influenced by error and lose our faith.

### **204. Are there Christians in churches which do not teach the Word of God correctly?**

#### **Bible passages:**

880) 2 Timothy 2:19 - "The Lord knows those who are His . . ."

881) John 10:16 - "And other sheep I have which are not in this fold; them I also must bring, and they will hear my voice; and there will be one flock and one shepherd."

882) John 10:27 - "My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow Me. And I give them eternal life . . ."

There are Christians in any church where the gospel is preached. This does not mean that we may have church fellowship with them. God does not want us to join together for worship and church work with any one who teaches contrary to what the Bible says.

## **205. What are the public confessions of the Lutheran Church?**

### **A. The Universal Creeds:**

1. The Apostles' Creed (Lutheran Hymnal, page 12)
2. The Nicene Creed (Lutheran Hymnal, page 22)
3. The Athanasian Creed (Lutheran Hymnal, page 53)

### **B. The Lutheran Creeds:**

1. Luther's Small Catechism (1529)
1. Luther's Large Catechism (1529)
2. The Augsburg Confession (1530)
3. The Apology (Defense) of the Augsburg Confession (1530)
4. The Smalcald Articles (1537)
5. The Formula of Concord (1577)



## THE FORGIVENESS OF SINS

*(Justification)*

## **206. What does the Spirit do daily among God's people?**

### **Bible passages:**

- 883) Acts 2:38 - Then Peter said to them, "Repent, and let every one of you be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins . . ."
- 884) Matthew 9:2 - And Jesus, seeing their faith, said to the paralytic, "Son, be of good cheer; your sins are forgiven you."

In the Holy Christian Church the Holy Spirit daily and richly forgives all sins to me and all believers.

## 207. How does God forgive sins?

### Bible passages:

- 885) Psalm 32:1 - Blessed is he whose transgression is forgiven, whose sin is covered. Blessed is the man to whom the LORD does not impute iniquity.
- 886) 2 Corinthians 5:19 - . . . God was in Christ reconciling the world to Himself, not imputing their trespasses to them, and has committed to us the word of reconciliation.
- 887) Jeremiah 31:34 - For I will forgive their iniquity, and their sin I will remember no more.
- 888) Micah 7:19 - You will cast all our sins into the depths of the sea.
- 889) Romans 8:33 - Who shall bring a charge against God's elect? It is God who justifies.

God forgives sins as a judge who declares a lawbreaker, "Not guilty."

*Impute:* to charge to one's account

*Reconcile:* to change the relationship; to make friends; to make peace

*Justify:* a legal term meaning to declare, "Not guilty," "Innocent"

## 208. Whom has God justified - declared, "Not guilty?"

### Bible passages:

- 890) 2 Corinthians 5:19 - . . . God was in Christ reconciling the world to Himself, not imputing their trespasses to them, and has committed to us the word of reconciliation.
- 891) John 3:16 - "For God so loved the world that He gave His only be- gotten Son, that whoever believes in Him should not perish but have everlasting life."
- 892) 1 John 2:2 - And [Christ] Himself is the propitiation for our sins, and not for ours only but also for the sins of the whole world.
- 893) John 1:29 - "Behold! The Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world!"

God declared all people in all the world, "Not guilty" of their sins. This is sometimes called UNIVERSAL JUSTIFICATION (or Objective Justification. For Personal Justification, cf. question 210).

## 209. On what basis did God declare the whole world, "Not guilty" of its sins?

### Bible passages:

- 894) 2 Corinthians 5:19,21 - . . . God was in Christ reconciling the world to Himself . . . For He made Him who knew no sin to be sin for us, that we might become the righteousness of God in Him.

895) Romans 3:23,24 - . . . for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God, being justified freely by His grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus . . .

896) Isaiah 53:6 - All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned, every one, to his own way; and the LORD has laid on Him the iniquity of us all.

897) Romans 5:18 - Therefore, as through one man's offense judgment came to all men, resulting in condemnation, even so through one Man's righteous act the free gift came to all men, resulting in justification of life.

**Condemn:** to declare, "Guilty." It is the opposite of justify.

898) Romans 4:25 - [Christ] was delivered up because of our offenses, and was raised because of our justification.

God justified the world on the basis of Christ's death and resurrection as our Substitute.

## **210. How do the benefits of Christ's death become our own?**

### **Bible passages:**

899) 1 Corinthians 6:11 - But you were washed, but you were sanctified, but you were justified in the name of the Lord Jesus and by the Spirit of our God.

900) 1 Corinthians 12:3 - . . . no one can say that Jesus is Lord except by the Holy Spirit.

901) Romans 3:28 - Therefore we conclude that a man is justified by faith apart from the deeds of the law.

902) Galatians 2:16 - . . . knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law but by faith in Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Christ Jesus, that we might be justified by faith in Christ and not by the works of the law; for by the works of the law no flesh shall be justified.

The Holy Spirit provides the benefits of Christ's death by giving people faith. This is sometimes called PERSONAL JUSTIFICATION (or Subjective Justification). Personal justification is BELIEVING that God has declared ME, "Not guilty."

## **211. How can we be certain of God's forgiveness?**

### **Bible passages:**

903) Romans 4:16 - Therefore it is of faith that it might be according to grace, so that the promise might be sure to all the seed . . . to those who are of the faith of Abraham, who is the father of us all.

- 904) Ephesians 3:12 - . . . in [Christ] we have boldness and access with confidence through faith in Him.
- 905) Ephesians 1:13,14 - In [Christ] you also trusted, after you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation; in whom also, having believed, you were sealed with the Holy Spirit of promise, who is the guarantee of our inheritance.
- 906) 2 Timothy 1:12 - . . . for I know whom I have believed and am persuaded that He is able to keep what I have committed to Him until that Day.

God's forgiveness rests on the work of Jesus Christ, not on what we think or do. God has told us about His forgiveness and justification in His Word.

## THE RESURRECTION TO ETERNAL LIFE



### **212. How does the Bible speak of death?**

#### **Bible narratives:**

- 907) Genesis 3:19 - God told Adam and Eve that their bodies would return to the ground when they died.
- 908) John 11:39 - Lazarus' body had been in the grave four days and had begun to decay and stink.

#### **Bible passage:**

- 909) Ecclesiastes 12:7 - Then the dust will return to the earth as it was, and the spirit will return to God who gave it.

When people die, their spirits return to God, and their bodies decay.

### **213. What will happen on the Last Day?**

#### **Bible narrative:**

- 910) 2 Peter 3:1-13 - The apostle Peter describes end-time events, especially the destruction of the earth by fire.

- a. On the Last Day the present world will be destroyed.

### **Bible passages.**

911) John 5:28,29 - “. . . for the hour is coming in which all who are in the graves will hear His voice and come forth . . .”

912) Acts 24:15 - “. . . there will be a resurrection of the dead, both of the just and the unjust.”

**Resurrection:**  
becoming alive  
after being dead

913) Revelation 1:7 - Behold, He is coming with clouds, and every eye will see Him, and they also who pierced Him.

914) Daniel 12:2 - And many of those who sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, some to shame and everlasting contempt.

**Contempt:**  
dishonor, shame,  
worthlessness

b. When Christ comes on the last day, He will raise all the dead.

### **214. Then what will happen to the unbelievers?**

#### **Bible passages:**

915) Mark 16:16 - “But he who does not believe will be condemned.”

916) Matthew 25:41,46 - “Depart from Me, you cursed, into the everlasting fire prepared for the devil and his angels’ . . . And these will go away into everlasting punishment.”

917) Matthew 23:33 - “Serpents, brood of vipers! How can you escape the condemnation of hell?”

Christ will send those who do not believe to HELL for eternal punishment.

### **215. What will happen to the believers?**

#### **Bible passages:**

918) Philippians 3:21 - [Christ] will transform our lowly body that it may be conformed to His glorious body . . .

919) Job 19:25,26 - For I know that my Redeemer lives, and He shall stand at last on the earth; and after my skin is destroyed, this I know, that in my flesh I shall see God, whom I shall see for myself, and my eyes shall behold, and not another.

920) 1 Corinthians 15:42, 44 - So also is the resurrection of the dead. The body is sown in corruption, it is raised in incorruption . . . It is sown a natural body, it is raised a spiritual body.

- a. Each believer will have his or her own body, which will be like Christ's body after He rose from the dead.

-----  
**Bible narratives:**

- 921) 1 Corinthians 15:1-58 - The apostle Paul tells us what Christ's resurrection from death means for our own resurrection.
- 922) 1 Thessalonians 4:13-18 - The sequence of the resurrection on the last day is described.

**Bible passages:**

- 923) Mark 16:16 - "He who believes and is baptized will be saved . . ."
- 924) Matthew 25:34 - "Then the King will say to those on His right hand, 'Come, you blessed of My Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world.'"
- 925) 1 Thessalonians 4:17 - And thus we shall always be with the Lord.
- 926) 2 Corinthians 5:1 - For we know that if our earthly house, this tent, is destroyed, we have a building from God, a house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens.
- b. Christ will invite the believers to their eternal inheritance.

**216. What will Christ's heavenly kingdom be like?**

**Bible narrative:**

- 927) Revelation 21 and 22 - Heaven is described in glorious pictures and language.

**Bible passages:**

- 928) Revelation 21:3,4 - And I heard a loud voice from heaven saying, "Behold, the tabernacle of God is with men, and He will dwell with them, and they shall be His people, and God Himself will be with them and be their God. And God will wipe away every tear from their eyes; there shall be no more death, nor sorrow, nor crying; and there shall be no more pain, for the former things have passed away."
- 929) Hebrews 4:9 - There remains therefore a rest for the people of God.
- 930) 1 John 3:2 - Beloved, now we are children of God; and it has not yet been revealed what we shall be, but we know that when He is revealed, we shall be like Him, for we shall see Him as He is.

In His heavenly kingdom we will be with the Lord forever.  
Nothing sinful or deadly will be there.

## **217. What should our attitude be while we're waiting for Christ's return?**

### **Bible passages:**

- 931) Matthew 24:44 - "Therefore you also be ready, for the Son of Man is coming at an hour when you do not expect Him."
- 932) Colossians 3:1,2 - If then you were raised with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ is, sitting at the right hand of God. Set your mind on things above, not on things on the earth.
- 933) 2 Peter 3:14, 15 - Therefore, beloved, looking forward to these things, be diligent to be found by Him in peace, without spot and blameless; and account that the longsuffering of our Lord is salvation . . .

Our Savior tells us to be ready for His coming by remaining faithful to Him all the days of our lives.

## **218. How are we sure of entering eternal life?**

### **Bible narrative:**

- 934) Romans 8:28-30 - Those whom God predestined in eternity He called to faith in Jesus during their time here on earth.

### **Bible passages:**

- 935) Ephesians 1:4-6 - . . . just as [God] chose us in [Christ] before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before Him in love, having predestined us to adoption as sons by Jesus Christ to Himself, according to the good pleasure of His will, to the praise of the glory of His grace, by which He has made us accepted in the Beloved.
- 936) John 10:27,28 - "My sheep hear My voice, and I know them, and they follow Me. And I give them eternal life, and they shall never perish; neither shall anyone snatch them out of My hand."

In eternity God chose individuals whom He in time brings to faith in Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of sins. This is sometimes called PREDESTINATION or ELECTION.

## **219. On what is God's choice in eternity based?**

### **Bible passages:**

- 937) Romans 11:5 - Even so then, at this present time there is a remnant according to the election of grace.



938) Ephesians 1:5,6 - . . . having predestined us . . . to the praise of the glory of His grace.

- a. Our election in eternity is based on God's GRACE. It is an ELECTION OF GRACE.

**Grace:** undeserved love and kindness

-----  
**Bible passages:**

939) Ephesians 1:4-7 - . . . just as [God] chose us in [Christ] . . . having predestined us to adoption as sons by Jesus Christ . . . by which He has made us accepted in the Beloved. In Him we have redemption through His blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of His grace.

940) Romans 8:29 - For whom He foreknew, He also predestined to be conformed to the image of his Son.

- b. Our election in eternity is based on the redemptive work of Jesus on the cross.



## **The Sacraments**

The Sacrament of Holy Baptism

-----

The Office of the Keys

-----

Confession

-----

The Sacrament of the Altar

-----

## **The Lord's Prayer**

About Prayer

-----

The Address

-----

The First Petition

-----

The Second Petition

-----

The Third Petition

-----

The Fourth Petition

-----

The Fifth Petition

-----

The Sixth Petition

-----

The Seventh Petition

-----





## 220. In what way does the Holy Spirit give people the blessings of forgiveness, faith, and eternal life?

### Bible passages:

941) Romans 10:17 - So then faith comes by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.

942) 2 Timothy 3:15 - . . . from childhood you have known the Holy Scriptures, which are able to make you wise for salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.

- a. The Holy Spirit uses the GOSPEL IN WORD to give people faith and keep them in faith.

-----

### Bible passages:

943) Acts 22:16 - "Arise and be baptized, and wash away your sins, calling on the name of the Lord."

944) Matthew 26:26-28 - "Take, eat; this is My body. . . Drink from it, all of you. For this is My blood of the new covenant which is shed for many for the remission of sins."

- b. The Holy Spirit also uses the GOSPEL IN SACRAMENT to give people faith (Baptism in many cases) and keep them in faith (Holy Communion).

Review: the MEANS OF GRACE is the Gospel in Word and Sacrament.

## 221. What is a Sacrament?

The word "Sacrament" is not found in the Bible. However, we use the word "Sacrament" to describe certain things which Christ has given us to use.

A Sacrament is a SACRED ACT connected with God's Word. When we use the word "Sacrament" we are talking about sacred acts described in the Bible which have these three characteristics:

- 1) A Sacrament is INSTITUTED BY CHRIST.
- 2) A Sacrament has EARTHLY ELEMENTS - that is, Christ tells us to use something on the earth. For example: water, bread, wine. These early elements are used in connection with God's Word.
- 3) A Sacrament gives SPIRITUAL BLESSINGS - like forgiveness of sins, spiritual life, and eternal salvation.

The two acts in the Bible which fit this definition are:

1. Baptism
2. The Lord's Supper



### **1. What is Baptism?**

Baptism is not just plain water. It is water used by God's command and connected with God's Word.

#### ***What is that Word of God?***

Christ our Lord says in the last chapter of Matthew.

"Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit"  
(Matthew 28:19).



### **222. Who instituted the Sacrament of Baptism?**

#### **Bible passage:**

945) Matthew 28:18,19 - Then Jesus came and spoke to them, saying, "All authority has been given to Me in heaven and on earth. Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit . . ."

Christ instituted Baptism when He told His disciples to baptize all nations in the name of the Triune God.

### **223. What does the word "baptize" mean?**

#### **Bible passages:**

946) Mark 1:8 - "I indeed baptized you with water . . ."

947) Mark 7:4 - [The Pharisees and all the Jews] do not eat unless they wash (Greek, "baptize"). And there are many other things which they have received and hold, like the washing (Greek, "baptizing") of cups, pitchers, copper vessels, and couches.

948) Acts 8:36 - "See, here is water. What hinders me from being baptized?"

The word "baptize" means to apply WATER. The water can be applied in any way: pouring, sprinkling, immersing, or washing. Water is the EARTHLY ELEMENT in baptism.

## **224. In what way is water used in the Sacrament of Baptism?**

### **Bible passages:**

- 949) Matthew 28:19 - "Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit."
- 950) Ephesians 5:25,26 - . . . Christ also loved the church and gave Himself for it, that He might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word . . .

The water is used in connection with God's Word.

## **225. What does it mean to be baptized "in the name of" the Triune God?**

### **Bible passages:**

- 951) Galatians 3:26,27 - For you are all [children] of God through faith in Christ Jesus. For as many of you as were baptized into Christ have put on Christ.
- 952) 1 Corinthians 12:13 - For by one Spirit we were all baptized into one body . . .

Through Baptism the Holy Spirit gives us faith and makes us members of His family.

## **226. Who is to be baptized?**

### **Bible passage:**

- 953) Matthew 28:19 - "Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them . . ."
- 954) Acts 2:38,39 - "Repent, and let every one of you be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins . . . For the promise is to you and to your children, and to all who are afar off . . ."

Christ wants all people to be baptized.

## **227. What do we do before the baptism of adults?**

### **Bible narratives:**

- 955) Acts 8:26-40 - The Ethiopian heard the Word of God from Philip before he was baptized.
- 956) Acts 16:25-33 - Paul and his companions “spoke the word of the Lord” to the jailer and his family before they baptized them.

Before we baptize adults we instruct them in God’s Word, so they know what baptism means and are not asking to be baptized for a wrong reason.

## **228. Why do we baptize infants?**

### **Bible passages:**

- 957) Matthew 28:19 - “Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them . . .”
- 958) Acts 2:39 - “For the promise is to you and to your children . . .”
  - a. We baptize infants because Jesus wants us to.  
They are PART OF ALL THE NATIONS.

-----

### **Bible passages:**

- 959) Psalm 51:5 - Behold, I was brought forth in iniquity, and in sin my mother conceived me.
- 960) John 3:5 - Jesus answered, “Most assuredly, I say to you, unless one is born of water and the Spirit, he cannot enter the kingdom of God.”
  - b. We baptize infants because they are SINNERS and need forgiveness.

-----

### **Bible passages:**

- 961) Matthew 18:6 - “But whoever causes one of these little ones who believe in Me to sin, it would be better for him if a millstone were hung around his neck, and he were drowned in the depth of the sea.”
- 962) Luke 18:15-17 - Then they brought infants to Him that He might touch them . . . Jesus called them to Him and said, “Let the little children come to Me, and do not forbid them; for of such is the kingdom of God. Assuredly, I say to you, whoever does not receive the kingdom of God as a little child will by no means enter it.”
  - c. We baptize infants because THEY TOO CAN BELIEVE.



## **229. Who may perform a baptism?**

### **Bible passage:**

963) Matthew 28:18,19 - Then Jesus came and spoke to them (His disciples, v. 16), saying, “. . . Go therefore . . . baptizing them. . .”

Christ gave the command to baptize to His disciples. The disciples are the believers. Any believer in Christ may baptize.

There may come a time when a believer will face an EMERGENCY and must then perform a baptism. This might happen, for example, when a baby just born is in danger of dying. It only takes WATER and the WORD to perform a baptism:

- 1) Pour, wash, or sprinkle water on the child’s head.
- 2) You may say the child’s name.
- 3) Say these words, “I baptize you in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit.”

The last page of The Lutheran Hymnal also has the form for emergency baptism. If there is time, you may also say a prayer and the Lord’s prayer.

## **230. Who usually performs baptisms?**

### **Bible passage:**

964) 1 Corinthians 14:40 - Let all things be done decently and in order.

Christian congregations ask their pastors to perform baptism so that everything is done in an orderly way.

## **231. What are witnesses and sponsors?**

- a. Sponsors are people chosen by a child’s parents to
  - 1) watch a baptism take place,
  - 2) speak for the child at his or her baptism, and
  - 3) be concerned about the child’s spiritual well-being with their prayers and encouragement, especially if the child should lose his or her parents. God did not tell us we had to have sponsors for children being baptized. It is a special custom in many churches. Since we ask sponsors to share our concern for a child’s spiritual well-being, it is important that a sponsor have the same Christian confession as the child’s parents. That is why we ask only members of our congregation or church body to be sponsors.
- b. The role of witness to a baptism is different. A witness is only asked to watch the baptism, so he or she can say the baptism took place. Anyone can witness a baptism.



**2. What are the benefits of Baptism?**

Baptism works the forgiveness of sins, delivers from death and the devil, and gives eternal salvation to all who believe, as the words and promises of God declare.

***What are these words and promises of God?***

Christ our Lord says in the last chapter of Mark, "He who believes and is baptized will be saved; but he who does not believe will be condemned" (Mark 16:16).

**232. What spiritual blessings does God offer and give in Baptism?**

**Bible passages:**

965) Acts 22:16 - "'Arise and be baptized, and wash away your sins . . .'"

966) Acts 2:38 - "Repent, and let every one of you be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins . . ."

a. God offers forgiveness of sins in Baptism.

-----  
**Bible passages:**

967) Romans 6:3 - Or do you not know that as many of us as were baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into his death?

968) Hebrews 2:14 - Inasmuch then as the children have partaken of flesh and blood, He Himself likewise shared in the same, that through death He might destroy him who had the power of death, that is, the devil.

b. God delivers from death and the devil in Baptism.

-----  
**Bible passages:**

969) Mark 16:16 - He who believes and is baptized will be saved . . .

970) 1 Peter 3:21 - There is also an antitype which now saves us, namely baptism . . .

c. God gives eternal life in Baptism.

### **233 Who receives these blessings from God in Baptism?**

#### **Bible passages:**

971) Galatians 3:26,27 - For you are all [children] of God through faith in Christ Jesus. For as many of you as were baptized into Christ have put on Christ.

972) Mark 16:16 - "He who believes and is baptized will be saved . . ."

Those who believe receive the benefits of baptism. In many cases the gospel in Baptism is the MEANS OF GRACE which the Holy Spirit uses to create faith.

### **234. What do Scriptures say about those who are not baptized?**

#### **Bible narrative:**

973) Luke 23:39-43 - Although not baptized, the thief crucified with Jesus received the promise of eternal life from the Savior.

#### **Bible passage:**

974) Mark 16:16 - "He who believes and is baptized will be saved; but he who does not believe will be condemned."

- a. An unbaptized adult can indeed come to faith in Christ through hearing the gospel. However, he or she will not despise the Sacrament. Only those who do not believe in Jesus for the forgiveness of their sins are damned.

#### **Bible narrative:**

975) 2 Samuel 12:15-23 - David confessed that his son, who died when he was seven days old, was saved.

- b. The Scriptures are silent about the fate of an unbaptized infant who dies. When an unbaptized baby dies, we commit him or her into the hands of our merciful God.

He does want us to baptize infants right after they are born. Then we would know about their faith.



**3. How can water do such great things?**

The water doesn't actually do anything by itself.

The power is in God's Word, which is in and with the water, and in faith which trusts this Word of God in the water.

Without the Word of God it is just plain water, and there is no baptism. But with the Word of God it really is a baptism; that is, a gracious water of life and washing of rebirth through the Holy Spirit.

Just as Saint Paul says in the third chapter of Titus:

“According to His mercy He saved us, through the washing of regeneration and renewing of the Holy Spirit, whom He poured out on us abundantly through Jesus Christ our Savior, that having been justified by His grace we should become heirs according to the hope of eternal life. This is a faithful saying . . .”  
(Titus 3:5-8).



**235. Where does Baptism get its power?**

**Bible passages:**

- 976) Ephesians 5:25,26 - . . . Christ also loved the church and gave Himself for it, that He might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word.
- 977) 1 Peter 1:23 - . . . having been born again, not of corruptible seed but incorruptible, through the word of God which lives and abides forever . . .
- a. Baptism receives its power and ability to create and preserve faith from God's Word.

-----

**Bible passages:**

- 978) Titus 3:5 - . . . according to His mercy He saved us, through the washing of regeneration and renewing of the Holy Spirit . . .
- 979) John 3:5 - Jesus answered, “Most assuredly, I say to you, unless one is born of water and the Spirit, he cannot enter the kingdom of God.”
- b. Baptism receives its power and ability to create and preserve faith from the Holy Spirit who uses the Word to give us God's blessings.

### **236. Why is the presence of the Word of God so important in Baptism?**

Without the Word of God the water is just plain water.  
There would be no promise and no blessing.

## **THE MEANING OF BAPTISM**



### **4. What is the meaning of this Baptism with water?**

It means that the old Adam in us should be drowned by daily contrition and repentance and die with all sins and evil desires. It also means that a new man should daily appear and arise, who lives eternally before God in righteousness and purity.

#### ***Where is this written?***

Saint Paul says in the sixth chapter of Romans:  
“Therefore we were buried with Him through baptism into death, that just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life”  
(Romans 6:4).

### **237. What effect does Baptism have on people?**

#### **Bible passage:**

980) Romans 6:4-6 - Therefore we were buried with Him through baptism into death, that just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life. For if we have been united in the likeness of His death, certainly we also shall be in the likeness of His resurrection, knowing this, that our old man was crucified with Him, that the body of sin might be done away with, that we should no longer be slaves of sin.

Through Baptism the Holy Spirit creates in us a will and power to live a new life.

### 238. What is the old Adam?

#### Bible narrative:

981) Galatians 5:19-21 - The works of the flesh are listed.

#### Bible passages:

982) Romans 7:18 - For I know that in me (that is, in my flesh) nothing good dwells . . .

983) Galatians 5:17 - For the flesh lusts against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh; and these are contrary to one another, so that you do not do the things that you wish.

984) Matthew 15:19 - "For out of the heart proceed evil thoughts, murders, adulteries, fornications, thefts, false witness, blasphemies."

The old Adam in each of us is our SINFUL NATURE, which also causes us to do sinful things.

*Other names for the old Adam: old man, flesh*

### 239. What is to happen to the old Adam?

#### Bible passages:

985) Colossians 3:9 - Do not lie to one another, since you have put off the old man with his deeds . . .

986) Ephesians 4:22 - . . . that you put off, concerning your former conduct, the old man which grows corrupt according to the deceitful lusts.

The old Adam is to be killed every day.

### 240. In what way is the old Adam to be killed?

#### Bible passages:

987) Psalm 51:3,4 - For I acknowledge my transgressions, and my sin is ever before me. Against You, You only, have I sinned, and done this evil in Your sight.

988) Psalm 51:17 - The sacrifices of God are a broken spirit, a broken and a contrite heart - these, O God, You will not despise.

989) 2 Corinthians 7:10 - For godly sorrow produces repentance to salvation . . .

990) Acts 20:21 - . . . testifying to Jews, and also to Greeks, repentance toward God and faith toward our Lord Jesus Christ.

*Contrition:*  
sorrow for sins

*Repentance:*  
the change which results from  
1) sorrow for sins and  
2) faith in Jesus for the forgiveness of sins. It also involves a turning away from sin.

The old Adam is killed by daily contrition and repentance.

## **241. What is the new man?**

### **Bible passages:**

- 991) Colossians 3:10 - . . . and have put on the new man who is renewed in knowledge according to the image of Him who created Him . . .
- 992) Ephesians 4:23,24 - . . . and be renewed in the spirit of your mind, and that you put on the new man which was created according to God in righteousness and true holiness.

The new man is the NEW SPIRITUAL NATURE,  
worked in us by the Holy Spirit through the gospel.

## **242. How does the new man affect us?**

### **Bible passages:**

- 993) 2 Corinthians 5:17 - Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation; old things have passed away; behold, all things have become new.
- 994) Romans 6:4 - . . . even so we also should walk in newness of life.
- 995) 2 Corinthians 5:15 - . . . [Christ] died for all, that those who live should live no longer for themselves, but for Him who died for them and rose again.
- 996) Galatians 5:22,23 - But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, gentleness, self-control.

The new man in us comes forth and arises daily so that we are alive in Christ, eager to do what our Savior wants us to do.



### **1. What is the Office of the Keys?**

The Office of the Keys is the special power Christ gave to His Church on earth to forgive the sins of penitent sinners and to retain the sins of the impenitent as long as they do not repent.

#### ***Where is this written?***

The holy evangelist John writes in chapter 20: “[Jesus] breathed on [His disciples] and said to them, ‘Receive the Holy Spirit. If you forgive the sins of any, they are forgiven them; if you retain the sins of any, they are retained.’”

#### **243. What are the “Keys?”**

##### **Bible passages:**

997) Matthew 16:19 - “And I will give you the keys of the kingdom of heaven, and whatever you bind on earth will be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth will be loosed in heaven.”

The KEYS are a gift and privilege of Jesus to use the MEANS OF GRACE to UNLOCK the kingdom of heaven.

Jesus also gave His people the power to refuse to forgive certain people and in that way LOCK the kingdom of heaven.

#### **244. To whom has Jesus given this gift?**

##### **Bible passages:**

998) John 20:22,23 - [Jesus] breathed on [His disciples] and said to them, “Receive the Holy Spirit. If you forgive the sins of any, they are forgiven them; if you retain the sins of any, they are retained.”

999) Matthew 16:19 - “And I will give you the keys of the kingdom of heaven . . .”

1000) 1 Peter 2:9 - But you are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, His own special people, that you may proclaim the praises of Him who called you out of darkness into His marvelous light . . .

1001) Matthew 18:18,20 - “Assuredly, I say to you, whatever you bind on earth will be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth will be loosed in heaven . . . For where two or three are gathered together in My name, I am there in the midst of them.”

Jesus gave the power of the keys to His people, the believers.





## 245. How does Jesus want us to use the keys to LOCK heaven to an impenitent sinner?

### Bible passages:

- 1002) 1 John 1:8 - If we say we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us.
- 1003) Romans 2:5 - But in accordance with your hardness and your impenitent heart you are treasuring up for yourself wrath in the day of wrath and revelation of the righteous judgment of God.
- 1004) John 20:23 - “. . . if you retain the sins of any, they are retained.”
- 1005) Proverbs 13:13 - He who despises the word will be destroyed.
- 1006) John 3:18 - “. . . he who does not believe is condemned already, because He has not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.”

Jesus tells His people to LOCK the kingdom of heaven to those who are impenitent by refusing to forgive the sins of those who are not sorry for them.

### *Impenitent:*

- a person who
- 1) is not sorry for his or her sins; and
  - 2) does not believe in Jesus for the forgiveness of sins

## 246. How does Jesus want us to use the keys to UNLOCK the kingdom of heaven?

### Bible passages:

- 1007) John 20:23 - “If you forgive the sins of any, they are forgiven them . . .”
- 1008) Acts 3:19 - “Repent therefore and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out, so that times of refreshing may come from the presence of the Lord.”
- 1009) 1 John 1:9 - If we confess our sins, He is faithful and just to forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.
- 1010) Psalm 51:17 - The sacrifices of God are a broken spirit, a broken and contrite heart - these, O God, You will not despise.

Jesus wants us to use the keys to UNLOCK the kingdom of heaven to those who are penitent.

To those who are sorry for their sins we announce the forgiveness of sins.

### *Contrite:*

sorry for sins

### *Penitent:*

- the change from
- 1) sorrow for sins and
  - 2) faith in Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of sins. There is also a turning away from sin.



## **2. How does a Christian congregation use the Keys?**

A Christian congregation, with its pastor, uses the Keys according to Christ's command, either by forgiving those who repent of their sins and are willing to change, or by excluding those who are obviously impenitent from the Christian congregation.

These actions are as valid and certain in heaven also as if Christ our dear Lord were dealing with us Himself.

### **247. Through whom does a Christian congregation usually use the keys?**

#### **Bible passages:**

- 1011) 1 Corinthians 4:1 - Let a man so consider us, as servants of Christ and stewards of the mysteries of God.
- 1012) Acts 20:28 - "Therefore take heed to yourselves and to all the flock, among which the Holy Spirit has made you overseers, to shepherd the church of God which He purchased with His own blood."
- 1013) Ephesians 4:11 - And [Christ] Himself gave some to be apostles, some prophets, some evangelists, and some pastors and teachers.
- 1014) 1 Corinthians 14:34 - Let your women keep silent in the churches, for they are not permitted to speak . . .

A Christian congregation publicly administers the keys through its pastor(s). A PASTOR is a "shepherd."

- 1) A pastor does his work because his congregation has CALLED him to do certain things in their name and in their behalf. (Divine call)
- 2) A pastor conducts worship services, administers the Sacraments, teaches the Word in many kinds of classes (Bible, instruction, Christian Day School, etc.), counsels the distressed and erring, visits the sick, and comforts the dying.

## **248. How are the keys administered in a Christian congregation in a general way?**

### **Bible narratives:**

- 1015) Luke 4:14-21 - Jesus preached to a group of people in the synagogue in Nazareth.
- 1016) Acts 2:14-41 - Peter preached to thousands on the day of Pentecost.

### **Bible passages:**

- 1017) Mark 16:15 - "Go into all the world and preach the gospel to every creature."
- 1018) Luke 24:47 - ". . . repentance and remission of sins should be preached in His name to all nations . . ."

The keys are used in a Christian congregation in a general way when the gospel of forgiveness of sins in Jesus Christ is preached faithfully.

## CHURCH DISCIPLINE

## **249. How does a Christian deal with someone who has sinned?**

### **Bible passage:**

- 1019) Galatians 6:1 - Brethren, if a man is overtaken in any trespass, you who are spiritual restore such a one in a spirit of gentleness, considering yourself lest you also be tempted.

Jesus wants His people to go to one who has sinned and use the Word in such a way that the one who has sinned repents.

## **250. How does Jesus want us to go about restoring someone who has sinned?**

The steps Jesus wants us to use are outlined in the following Bible passages:

1. Matthew 18:15 - Moreover, if your brother sins against you, go and tell him his fault between you and him alone. If he hears you, you have gained your brother.
2. Matthew 18:16 - But if he will not hear you, take with you one or two more, that by the mouth of two or three witnesses every word may be established.
3. Matthew 18:17 - And if he refuses to hear them, tell it to the church. But if he refuses to hear the church, let him be to you like a heathen and a tax collector.

### **251. What is the purpose of this procedure?**

The purpose in Matthew 18:15-17 is to “gain your brother,” that is, to bring the person to repent of his or her sin(s).

### **252. What if the individual who has sinned continues to be impenitent?**

#### **Bible passage:**

1020) 1 Corinthians 5:4,5 - In the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, when you are gathered together . . . deliver such a one to Satan for the destruction of the flesh . . .

The obviously (openly) impenitent individual is excluded from the Christian congregation. This is often called EXCOMMUNICATION.

**Excommunication:**  
removed from the “communion” or congregation. An excommunicated person may not come to Holy Communion, have a leadership role in any congregational activity, have his or her name on a congregation’s membership list, or be treated as if he or she were still a Christian.

### **253. What is the purpose of excommunication?**

#### **Bible passage:**

1021) 1 Corinthians 5:4,5 - In the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, when you are gathered together . . . deliver such a one to Satan for the destruction of the flesh, that his spirit may be saved in the day of the Lord Jesus.

The purpose of removing a person from the “communion” is to show him or her how serious and dangerous it is to be impenitent. We do this in the hope of leading him or her to repent, for a person who dies in impenitence will not have eternal life.

### **254. What if the impenitent person later repents?**

#### **Bible passages:**

1022) 2 Corinthians 2:7,8 - ... so that, on the contrary, you ought rather to forgive and comfort him, lest perhaps such a one be swallowed up with too much sorrow. Therefore I urge you to reaffirm your love to him.

1023) Luke 15:10 - Likewise, I say to you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner who repents.

A Christian congregation is happy to receive those who repent of their sins. Such a person is assured of God’s and our forgiveness and restored to the “communion.”

**255. How important are these actions of a Christian congregation, its members, or its pastor(s).**

**Bible narratives:**

1024) John 20:22,23 -

1025) Matthew 16:19 - Jesus gave His disciples the keys.

1026) Matthew 18:15-20 -

**Bible passages:**

1027) Luke 10:16 - "He who hears you hears Me, he who rejects you rejects Me, and he who rejects Me rejects Him who sent Me."

Jesus wants His people to be concerned about the spiritual life of others and gives them authority to deal with repentant as well as unrepentant sinners.

**CONFESSION**



**1. What is Confession?**

There are two parts to confession.

One is that we confess our sins.

The other is that we receive absolution, or forgiveness, from a fellow Christian as from God Himself, not doubting, but firmly believing that our sins are forgiven in this way before our heavenly Father.

**256. What is the first part of Confession?**

**Bible passages:**

1028) Psalm 51:3,4 - For I acknowledge my transgressions, and my sin is ever before me. Against You, You only, have I sinned, and done this evil in Your sight . . .

1029) James 5:16 - Confess your trespasses to one another . . .

1030) Luke 15:21 - "And the son said to [his father], 'Father, I have sinned against heaven and in your sight, and am no longer worthy to be called your son.'"

**Confess:** to say openly; to say we did it!

a. God wants us to confess our sins to Him and to one another.

**Bible passages:**

1031) Isaiah 59:2 - But your iniquities have separated you from your God; and your sins have hidden His face from you, so that He will not hear.

1032) Romans 6:23 - For the wages of sin is death . . .

1033) Romans 3:12 - They have all gone out of the way; they have together become unprofitable; there is none who does good, no, not one.

b. God wants us to recognize that because of our sins we deserve eternal death in hell.

**CONFESSION**



**2. What sins should we confess?**

Before God we should plead guilty of all sins, even those we don't know we have done, as we do in the Lord's Prayer. However, before one another we should confess only those sins which we know and feel in our hearts.

**257. To whom do we confess our sins?**

**Bible passages:**

1034) Psalm 51:4 - Against You, You only, have I sinned, and done this evil in Your sight . . .

1035) Psalm 19:12 - Who can understand his errors? Cleanse me from secret faults.

1036) Matthew 6:12 - "And forgive us our debts . . ."

a. Before God we confess all our sins, even the ones we do not know we have done.

-----  
**Bible passages:**

1037) James 5:16 - Confess your trespasses to one another . . .

1038) Matthew 5:23,24 - "Therefore, if you bring your gift to the altar, and there remember that your brother has something against you, leave your gift there before the altar, and go your way. First be reconciled to your brother, and then come and offer your gift."

b. Before a fellow Christian or pastor we may confess those sins which are troubling our hearts and consciences.

## CONFESSION



### 3. Which sins are these?

Examine your place in life according to the Ten Commandments. Have you been faithful as a father, mother, son, daughter, employer, or employee? Have you been disobedient, unfaithful, or lazy?

Have you injured anyone by what you have said or done?

Have you stolen anything, neglected your duty, been careless, or damaged anything?

#### 258. How does God lead us to recognize our sins?

##### Bible passage:

1039) Romans 3:19,20 - Now we know that whatever the law says, it says to those who are under the law, that every mouth may be stopped, and all the world become guilty before God. Therefore by the deeds of the law no flesh will be justified in His sight, for by the law is the knowledge of sin.

God uses His law to show us that our lives are sinful.

## CONFESSION



### 4. What will a fellow Christian say to someone who has confessed his or her sins?

He will say, "According to the command of our Lord Jesus Christ I forgive you your sins in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit. Amen."

#### 259. What is the second part of Confession?

##### Bible passages:

1040) 2 Samuel 12:13 - Then David said to Nathan, "I have sinned against the LORD." And Nathan said to David, "The LORD also has put away your sin; you shall not die."

1041) 1 John 1:9 - If we confess our sins, He is faithful and just to forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.

1042) Psalm 32:5 - I acknowledged my sin to You, and my iniquity I have not hidden. I said, "I will confess my transgressions to the LORD," and You forgave the iniquity of my sin.

**Absolve:** to announce forgiveness

1043) Matthew 9:2 - "Son, be of good cheer; your sins are forgiven you."

The second part of Confession is the ABSOLUTION.

**260. With what words do we confess our sins and ask God's forgiveness?**

"O almighty God, merciful Father, I, a poor, miserable sinner, confess to You all my sins and iniquities with which I have ever offended You and justly deserved Your temporal and eternal punishment. But I am heartily sorry for them and sincerely repent of them, and I pray You of Your boundless mercy and for the sake of the holy, innocent, bitter sufferings and death of Your beloved Son, Jesus Christ, to be gracious and merciful to me, a poor, sinful being."  
(Cf. The Lutheran Hymnal, page 16 in "The Order for Holy Communion")

**261. What does the pastor say to those who have confessed their sins?**

"Upon this your confession, I by virtue of my office, as a called servant of the Word, announce the grace of God to all of you, and in the stead and by the command of our Lord Jesus Christ I forgive you all your sins in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit."  
(Cf. The Lutheran Hymnal, page 16 in "The Order for Holy Communion")





**1. What is the Sacrament of the Altar?**

It is the true body and blood of our Lord Jesus Christ, given to us Christians under the bread and wine to eat and to drink, as it was instituted by Christ Himself.

**Where is this written?**

The holy evangelists Matthew, Mark, Luke, and the apostle Paul write this way: "Our Lord Jesus Christ, the same night in which He was betrayed, took bread; and, when He had given thanks, He broke it and gave it to His disciples saying, 'Take, eat.

This is My body, which is given for you.

Do this in remembrance of Me.'

"In the same way He took the cup, after supper, gave thanks, and gave it to them saying, 'Drink of it, all of you.

This cup is the new covenant in My blood, which is shed for you for the forgiveness of sins. Do this, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of Me.'"



**262. Why do we say Holy Communion is a Sacrament?**

**Bible narratives:**

- 1044) Matthew 26:17-30 | Jesus instituted the sacrament
- 1045) Mark 14: 12-26 | while celebrating the Passover
- 1046) Luke 22:7-23 | with His disciples.

**Bible passage:**

- 1047) 1 Corinthians 11:23-25 - . . . the Lord Jesus Christ on the same night in which He was betrayed took bread . . . "Take, eat." . . . He also took the cup . . . "This do" . . .

**Communion:** the coming together into one; a sharing together

- a. The Sacrament of Holy Communion was instituted by Jesus.

**Bible passage:**

1048) Matthew 26:26,27 - . . . Jesus took bread . . .  
Then He took the cup . . .

1049) Matthew 26:29 - "But I say to you, I will not drink  
of this fruit of the vine . . ."

b. There are EARTHLY ELEMENTS used in connection with  
God's Word. The earthly elements in the Sacrament of Holy  
Communion are bread and wine.

We may use any kind of bread for the Sacrament. The bread  
we commonly use for Holy Communion is a wafer.

The wine is the "fruit of the vine." It is grape wine.

-----

**Bible passage:**

1050) Luke 22:19 - This is My body which is given for you.

1051) Matthew 26:28 - For this is My blood of the new  
covenant, which is shed for many for the remission of sins.

c. Our Savior gives SPIRITUAL BLESSINGS in the Sacrament -  
that is, forgiveness of sins, spiritual life, and eternal salvation.

**263. What are some of the names for the Sacrament of  
Holy Communion?**

**Bible narratives:**

1052) 1 Corinthians 10:16 - Communion

1053) 1 Corinthians 10:21 - the Lord's Table

1054) 1 Corinthians 11:20 - the Lord's Supper  
(Sacrament of the Altar).

**264. What are we to do with the bread and wine?**

**Bible passage:**

1055) Matthew 26:26-27 - Jesus took bread, blessed it and  
broke it, and gave it to the disciples and said, "Take, eat;  
this is My body." Then He took the cup, and gave thanks,  
and gave it to them saying, "Drink from it, all of you."

Jesus wants us to eat the bread and drink the wine.

## **265. What is present with the bread and wine in the Sacrament?**

### **Bible narrative:**

1056) 1 Corinthians 11:23-25 - The words of institution of the Sacrament.

### **Bible passages:**

1057) Mark 14:22-24 - And as they were eating, Jesus took bread, blessed it and broke it, and gave it to them and said, "Take, eat; this is My body." Then He took the cup, and when He had given thanks He gave it to them, and they all drank from it. And He said to them, "This is My blood of the new covenant, which is shed for many."

1058) 1 Corinthians 10:16 - The cup of blessing which we bless, is it not the communion of the blood of Christ? The bread which we break, is it not the communion of the body of Christ?

Jesus gives us His body when we eat the bread, and He gives us His blood when we drink the wine in the Sacrament.

We believe in His REAL PRESENCE, because Christ's body is really present with the bread, and His blood is really present with the wine.

There are some who believe differently about Holy Communion:

- a) Representation. Some say that the bread only represents the body of Christ, and the wine only represents the blood of Christ. They say that the body and blood of Christ are not really present in the Sacrament.
- b) Transubstantiation ("changes its substance"). Others say that the bread actually becomes the body of Christ, and the wine actually becomes the blood of Christ. They say the bread and wine are not really present in the Sacrament.

## **266. How do we receive Christ's body and blood?**

We receive the bread and wine in a natural way when we eat and drink. We receive Christ's body and blood in a supernatural or miraculous way (above the laws of nature).

**267. What are we remembering when we receive the Sacrament?**

**Bible passages:**

- 1059) Luke 22:19 - And He took bread, gave thanks and broke it, and gave it to them, saying, "This is My body which is given for you; do this in remembrance of Me."
- 1060) 1 Corinthians 11:25,26 - In the same manner He also took the cup after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in My blood. This do, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of me." For as often as you eat this bread and drink this cup, you proclaim the Lord's death till He comes.

When we receive the Sacrament we are remembering the death of Jesus Christ, which earned the forgiveness of our sins.

**THE SACRAMENT OF THE ALTAR**



**2. What is the benefit of this eating and drinking?**

The words, "Given and shed for you for the forgiveness of sins," show us that God gives forgiveness of sins, life, and salvation through the Sacrament. For where there is forgiveness of sins, there is also life and salvation.

**268. What blessings are ours because Christ gave His body into death and shed His blood?**

**Bible passages:**

- 1061) Titus 2:14 - [Christ] gave Himself for us, that He might redeem us from every lawless deed and purify for Himself His own special people, zealous for good works.
- 1062) Ephesians 1:7 - In [Christ] we have redemption through His blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of His grace . . .

Christ gave Himself into death so that there is forgiveness of sins for all people.

## **269. What blessings are ours in the Sacrament of Holy Communion?**

### **Bible narrative:**

1063) The words of institution.

1064) 1 Corinthians 11:23-25 - This is Paul's record of the words of institution.

### **Bible passages:**

1065) Matthew 26:28 - "For this is My blood of the new covenant, which is shed for many for the remission of sins."

1066) Luke 22:19,20 - ". . . This is my body which is given for you . . . This cup is the new covenant in My blood, which is shed for you."

1067) Romans 11:27 - "For this is my covenant with them, when I take away their sins."

- a. Christ assures us of forgiveness of sins in the Sacrament of Holy Communion.

-----

### **Bible passages:**

1068) John 15:5 - "I am the vine, you are the branches. He who abides in Me, and I in him, bears much fruit; for without Me you can do nothing."

1069) 1 Timothy 4:8 - For bodily exercise profits a little, but godliness is profitable for all things, having promise of the life that now is and of that which is to come.

1070) Romans 6:22,23 - But now having been set free from sin, and having become slaves of God, you have your fruit to holiness, and the end, everlasting life. For the wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord.

- b. Where there is forgiveness of sins, there is also life and salvation.

**270. What effect does communion with Christ have on our daily life?**

**Bible passages:**

1071) John 15:5 - "I am the vine, you are the branches. He who abides in Me, and I in him, bears much fruit; for without Me you can do nothing."

1072) Philippians 4:13 - I can do all things through Christ who strengthens me.

1073) Romans 12:1 - I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that you present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable to God, which is your reasonable service.

As He assures us of the forgiveness of our sins, Christ also gives us the strength and direction to do what He wants us to do.

**THE SACRAMENT OF THE ALTAR**

 **3. How can eating and drinking do such wonderful things?**

Eating and drinking actually do nothing.

It is the words, "Given and shed for you for the forgiveness of sins" which do this. These words, together with the bodily eating and drinking, are the main part of the Sacrament. Whoever believes these words has exactly what they say: forgiveness of sins.



**271. Where does the Sacrament of Holy Communion get the power to do all that it does?**

**Bible narrative:**

1074) 1 Corinthians 11:23-25 - The words of institution.

**Bible passages:**

1075) Matthew 26:26-28 - And as they were eating, Jesus took bread, blessed it and broke it, and gave it to the disciples and said, "Take, eat; this is My body."

Then He took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, "Drink from it, all of you. For this is My blood of the new covenant, which is shed for many for the remission (forgiveness) of sins."

The power of the Sacrament is in the WORDS of Jesus, "Given and shed for you for the forgiveness of sins."

**272. How do we benefit from the words of forgiveness in the Sacrament?**

**Bible narrative:**

1076) Numbers 21:4-9 - Only those who believed the Lord's words about looking to the bronze serpent were saved from the deadly poison of the snakes.

**Bible passages:**

1077) Romans 10:17 - So then faith comes by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.

1078) Hebrews 4:2 - For indeed the gospel was preached to us as well as to them; but the word which they heard did not profit them, not being mixed with faith in those who heard it.

Those who believe the words which Christ used when He gave us the Sacrament have the blessings of the Sacrament: forgiveness of sins, life, and salvation.

**273. Why is it important to remember where the Sacrament gets its power?**

We need to remember that the Sacrament gets its power from the Word of God, so

- a. That we do not think the Sacrament is merely a ceremony and does not mean too much.
- b. That we do not think that attending the Sacrament is a good work on our part which will impress God.
- c. That we do not think that receiving the Sacrament is a medicine which will cure, or ward off, all bodily sicknesses and death.
- d. That we do regard the Gospel in the Sacrament as a MEANS OF GRACE: a tool the Holy Spirit uses to preserve and strengthen our faith.



**4. When is an individual properly prepared to receive this Sacrament?**

Customs in connection with eating and clothing are indeed a fine preparation. However, a person is truly worthy and well-prepared who has faith in these words, “Given and shed for you for the forgiveness of sins.”

Whoever does not believe these words or doubts them is unworthy and unprepared.

The words, “for you,” require nothing but believing hearts.

**274. Why are we careful about getting ready to receive the Sacrament?**

**Bible passage:**

1079) 1 Corinthians 11:27,29 - Therefore whoever eats this bread or drinks this cup of the Lord in an unworthy manner will be guilty of the body and blood of the Lord . . . For he who eats and drinks in an unworthy manner eats and drinks judgment to himself, not discerning the Lord’s body.

It is possible to receive the Sacrament in an improper and unworthy manner. Those who eat and drink unworthily harm themselves spiritually.

**275. Do outward customs prepare us properly for receiving the Sacrament?**

Fasting, wearing special clothes, and other customs may help us concentrate on what the Sacrament means, or show our respect to the Lord, but they are not what prepare us properly to receive the Sacrament of Holy Communion.

**276. When is a person properly prepared to receive the Sacrament in a worthy manner?**

**Bible passages:**

1080) 1 Corinthians 11:28 - But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of that bread and drink of that cup.



1081) 1 Corinthians 11:27,29 - Therefore whoever eats this bread or drinks this cup of the Lord in an unworthy manner will be guilty of the body and blood of the Lord . . . For he who eats and drinks in an unworthy manner eats and drinks judgment to himself, not discerning the Lord's body.

A person is truly ready to receive the Sacrament who has FAITH in these words, "Given and shed for you for the forgiveness of sins."

The PURPOSE of our examination before Holy Communion is to:

- a. Recognize that we have sinned and need the forgiveness of the Sacrament.
- b. See whether we believe in Jesus Christ, who is giving us forgiveness of our sins.
- c. Recognize that Christ gives us His body and blood with the bread and wine in the Sacrament (Real presence).

## **277. Who should come to the Sacrament of Holy Communion?**

### **Bible passages:**

1082) 1 Corinthians 11:24,25 - . . . do this in remembrance of Me . . . This do, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of Me.

1083) 1 Corinthians 11:26 - For as often as you eat this bread and drink this cup, you proclaim the Lord's death till He comes.

- a. Those who can remember and proclaim Christ's death may come to the Sacrament.

-----

### **Bible passage:**

1084) 1 Corinthians 11:28 - But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of that bread and drink of that cup.

- b. Only those who can examine themselves may come to the Sacrament of Holy Communion.

### **Bible passages:**

1085) 1 Corinthians 1:10 - Now I plead with you, brethren, by the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that you all speak the same thing, and that there be no divisions among you, but that you be perfectly joined together in the same mind and in the same judgment.

1086) 1 Corinthians 10:17 - For we, being many, are one bread and one body, for all partake of that one bread.

1087) Romans 16:17 - Now I urge you, brethren, note those who cause divisions and offenses, contrary to the doctrine which you learned, and avoid them.

c. We should commune only with those with whom we are in fellowship. (See Church Fellowship, questions 197-199)

### **278. Who should not be permitted to come to the Sacrament?**

- a. Those who are obvious unbelievers.
- b. Those who are obviously impenitent; who are not sorry for (a) sin and could not for that reason be forgiven (absolved).
- c. Those who have not learned the meaning of our Lord's life, death, and resurrection.
- d. Those who are unable to examine themselves. For example: those who are asleep, in a coma, have certain types of mental illness, babies, etc.
- e. Those who belong to a different church and church body.
- f. Those who deny the real presence.

CLOSE COMMUNION. We call our practice in connection with the Sacrament, Close Communion. It means that all who are coming to the Sacrament are "close" to one another. They are expressing the unity of their faith and confession.

COMMUNION ANNOUNCEMENT. Many congregations ask that those who plan to come to the Sacrament when it is offered announce to the pastor.

## **279. Why should we eagerly and frequently receive the Sacrament of Holy Communion?**

### **Bible passages:**

1088) Matthew 11:28 - "Come to Me, all you who labor and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest."

1089) Hebrews 4:16 - Let us therefore come boldly to the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy and find grace to help in time of need.

We should come to the Sacrament eagerly and frequently, because in it Christ assures us that our sins are forgiven. In this way Christ strengthens our faith and life in Him.

## THE MODEL PRAYER

### MATTHEW 6:5-13

"AND WHEN YOU PRAY, YOU SHALL NOT BE LIKE THE HYPOCRITES. FOR THEY LOVE TO PRAY STANDING IN THE SYNAGOGUES AND ON THE CORNERS OF THE STREETS, THAT THEY MAY BE SEEN BY MEN. ASSUREDLY, I SAY TO YOU, THEY HAVE THEIR REWARD. BUT YOU, WHEN YOU PRAY, GO INTO YOUR ROOM, AND WHEN YOU HAVE SHUT YOUR DOOR, PRAY TO YOUR FATHER WHO IS IN THE SECRET PLACE; AND YOUR FATHER WHO SEES IN SECRET WILL REWARD YOU OPENLY. AND WHEN YOU PRAY, DO NOT USE VAIN REPETITIONS AS THE HEATHEN DO. FOR THEY THINK THAT THEY WILL BE HEARD FOR THEIR MANY WORDS.

"THEREFORE DO NOT BE LIKE THEM. FOR YOUR FATHER KNOWS THE THINGS YOU HAVE NEED OF BEFORE YOU ASK HIM."

"IN THIS MANNER, THEREFORE, PRAY:

OUR FATHER IN HEAVEN,  
HALLOWED BE YOUR NAME.

YOUR KINGDOM COME.  
YOUR WILL BE DONE  
ON EARTH AS IT IS IN HEAVEN.

GIVE US THIS DAY OUR DAILY BREAD.

AND FORGIVE US OUR DEBTS,  
AS WE FORGIVE OUR DEBTORS.

AND DO NOT LEAD US INTO TEMPTATION,  
BUT DELIVER US FROM THE EVIL ONE.  
FOR YOURS IS THE KINGDOM AND THE POWER  
AND THE GLORY FOREVER.  
AMEN."

## ( ABOUT PRAYER )

**280. What is prayer?****Bible passages:**

1090) Psalm 145:18,19 - The LORD is near to all who call upon Him, to all who call upon Him in truth. He will fulfill the desire of those who fear Him; He also will hear their cry and save them.

1091) Psalm 25:1 - To You, O LORD, I lift up my soul.

PRAYER is a heart to heart talk with God.

**281. To whom should we pray?****Bible passages:**

1092) Matthew 4:10 - "You shall worship the LORD your God, and Him only shall you serve."

1093) Psalm 65:2 - O You who hear prayer, to You all flesh will come.

1094) Isaiah 44:8 - "Is there a God besides Me? Indeed there is no other Rock; I know not one."

a. We pray to the only true God - the Triune God.

**Bible passages:**

1095) Psalm 115:6 - [Idols] have ears, but they do not hear . . .

1096) 1 Timothy 2:5 - For there is one God and one Mediator between God and men, the Man Christ Jesus.

b. We should not pray to idols, to saints, or to the virgin Mary.

**282. Why should we pray?****Bible passage:**

1097) Matthew 7:7 - "Ask, and it will be given to you; seek, and you will find; knock, and it will be opened to you."

a. We pray because God has asked us to.

**Bible passages:**

- 1098) Matthew 7:8 - "For everyone who asks receives, and he who seeks finds, and to him who knocks it will be opened."
- 1099) John 16:23 - "Most assuredly, I say to you, whatever you ask the Father in My name He will give you."
- 1100) James 5:16 - The effective, fervent prayer of a righteous man avails much.

b. We pray because God has promised to hear and answer us.

-----

**Bible passage:**

- 1101) Psalm 50:15 - "Call upon Me in the day of trouble; I will deliver you, and you shall glorify Me."

c. We pray because of our great need.

-----

**Bible passage:**

- 1102) Psalm 107:1 - Oh, give thanks to the LORD, for He is good! For His mercy endures forever.

d. We pray to thank our God for everything He has done for us.

**283. Who can pray?**

**Bible passages:**

- 1103) Hebrews 11:6 - But without faith it is impossible to please Him . . .
- 1104) 1 Peter 3:12 - "For the eyes of the LORD are on the righteous, and his ears are open to their prayers; but the face of the LORD is against those who do evil."

Only those who believe in Jesus as their Savior can offer a proper prayer.

**284. How should we pray?**

**Bible narrative:**

- 1105) Matthew 6:5-8 - Jesus instructs His disciples about the way they should pray.

**Bible passage:**

1106) John 16:23 - "Most assuredly, I say to you, whatever you ask the Father in My name He will give you."

a. We should pray in the name of Jesus. Without Him we could not approach God or talk with Him.

-----

**Bible passages:**

1107) Matthew 21:22 - "And all things, whatever you ask in prayer, believing, you will receive."

1108) James 1:6 - But let him ask in faith, with no doubting, for he who doubts is like a wave of the sea driven and tossed by the wind.

b. We should pray with confidence that God hears and answers.

**285. What should we ask of God when we pray?**

**Bible passages:**

1109) Philippians 4:6 - Be anxious for nothing, but in everything by prayer and supplication, with thanksgiving, let your requests be made known to God . . .

1110) Mark 11:24 - "Therefore I say to you, whatever things you ask, when you pray, believe that you receive them, and you will have them."

1111) 1 Timothy 2:1 - Therefore, I exhort first of all that supplications, prayers, intercessions, and giving of thanks be made for all men.

a. We can bring any request to God about anyone and anything.

-----

**Bible passages:**

1112) Matthew 8:2 - "Lord, if You are willing, You can make me clean."

1113) Luke 22:42 - "Father, if it is Your will, remove this cup from Me; nevertheless, not My will, but Yours be done."

*Temporal:* having to do with time, or our physical life on this earth

b. When we pray for TEMPORAL gifts, we pray, "If it is Your will . . ."

**Bible passages:**

1114) Luke 11:13 - "If you then, being evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to those who ask Him!"

1115) 1 John 5:14 - Now this is the confidence that we have in Him, that if we ask anything according to His will, He hears us.

- c. When we pray for SPIRITUAL gifts, we use no "If . . ." We already know God wants us to have them.

**286. How does God answer our prayers?**

- a. God may answer our prayers in His Word and through those who bring us His Word.
- b. God may answer our prayers through His representatives (including parents).
- c. God's answer may be, "No."
- d. God may answer after some time has passed.
- e. God may answer in a way different from what we expected.

**287. What is the Lord's Prayer?****Bible narratives:**

1116) Matthew 6:9-13 - Jesus told His disciples to pray "in this manner" and then gave the words of the prayer.

1117) Luke 11:2 - Jesus told His disciples to pray the words of the Lord's prayer.

The Lord's Prayer is the name we give to a prayer which Jesus told His disciples to use (NKJV):

"Our Father in heaven;

"Hallowed be Your name; Your kingdom come; Your will be done on earth as it is in heaven; Give us this day our daily bread; And forgive us our trespasses as we forgive those who trespass against us; And do not lead us into temptation; But deliver us from the evil one;

"For Yours is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, forever. Amen."

We sometimes divide the prayer into:

- a. The Address - the One to whom we're talking,
- b. The Seven Petitions - each petition is a request,
- c. The Doxology - a word of praise to God, giving credit where it is due.





***(Children Talk with Their Heavenly Father)***

*"Our Father who art in heaven."*

***What does this mean?***

With these words God tenderly encourages us to believe that He is our true Father and we are His true children, so that we may ask Him boldly and with complete confidence as dear children ask their dear father.

**288. Why do we say, "Our Father . . . "?**

**Bible passages:**

1118) James 1:17 - Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, and comes down from the Father of lights . . .

1119) Galatians 3:26 - For you are all [children] of God through faith in Christ Jesus.

1120) Romans 8:15,16 - . . .but you received the Spirit of adoption by whom we cry out, "Abba, Father." The Spirit Himself bears witness with our spirit that we are children of God . . .

1121) Matthew 7:11 - "If you then, being evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask Him!"

- a. We say, "Our Father . . ." because God is the Father of Jesus Christ and us. We became children of the heavenly Father through faith in His Son.
- b. We also say, "Our Father . . ." since He is the One to whom we are talking to (addressing) in this prayer.
- c. We say, "Our Father . . ." because He is the One who gives us what we need.

**289. What attitude should we have when we talk with our heavenly Father?**

**Bible Passage:**

1122) Hebrews 4:16 - Let us therefore come boldly to the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy and find grace to help in time of need.

We should talk with our heavenly Father boldly and confidently, as dear children ask their dear father.





***(God's Word, Taught and Lived)***

"Hallowed be Thy name."

***What does this mean?***

God's name is certainly holy all by itself,  
but we pray in this petition that we also keep it holy.

***How is God's name kept holy?***

God's name is kept holy when the Word of God is taught  
in its truth and purity, and we as children of God also live a  
holy life according to it. Help us do this, dear heavenly Father.

But whoever teaches and lives contrary to the Word of God  
dishonors God's name among us. Keep us from doing this,  
heavenly Father.

**290. What is God's name?**

**Bible passages:**

- 1123) Isaiah 42:8 - "I am the LORD, that is my name;  
and My glory I will not give to another, nor My praise  
to graven images."  
1124) Exodus 20:24 - "'In every place where I record My name I  
will come to you, and I will bless you.'"  
1125) Romans 10:13 - For "whoever calls upon the name of the  
LORD shall be saved."

God's name is what identifies and describes Him. It is every  
revelation God has made about Himself. (See The Second  
Commandment)

**291. What do we learn about God from His name?**

**Bible passage:**

- 1126) Exodus 34:5,6 - Then the LORD descended in the cloud  
and stood with him there, and proclaimed the name of the  
LORD. And the LORD passed before him and proclaimed,  
"The LORD, the LORD God, merciful and gracious,  
longsuffering, and abounding in goodness and truth . . ."  
1127) Exodus 20:24 - "'In every place where I record My name  
I will come to you, and I will bless you.'"

We learn that God is our loving Savior from His name.

**292. What does it mean to “hallow” God’s name?**

To hallow God’s name means to set it apart for a divine, saving purpose.

**293. Why can’t we make God’s name “holy?”**

**Bible passages:**

1128) Psalm 115:1 - Not unto us, O LORD, not unto us, but to Your name give glory, because of Your great mercy, and because of Your truth.

God’s name is holy all by itself. Nothing we can do or say will ever change that.

**294. What are we praying for when we ask God to “hallow” His name?**

**Bible passages:**

1129) John 17:17 - “Sanctify them by Your truth. Your word is truth.”

1130) Jeremiah 23:28 - “. . .And he who speaks My word, let him speak My word faithfully.”

1131) Psalm 48:10 - According to Your name, O God, so is Your praise to the ends of the earth . . .

1132) 2 Timothy 4:2 - Preach the word! Be ready in season and out of season. Convince, rebuke, exhort, with all longsuffering and teaching.

a. When we pray, “Hallowed be Thy name,” we are asking God to bless us so that we TEACH HIS WORD in its truth and purity.

-----

**Bible passages:**

1133) Matthew 5:14,16 - “You are the light of the world . . . Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works and glorify your Father in heaven.”

1134) 2 Corinthians 3:3 - . . . you are manifestly an epistle of Christ, ministered by us, written not with ink but by the Spirit of the living God, not on tablets of stone but on tablets of flesh, that is, of the heart.

### **Bible passages:**

1135) 2 Thessalonians 1:11,12 - Therefore we also pray always for you that our God would count you worthy of this calling, and fulfill the good pleasure of His goodness and the work of faith with power, that the name of our Lord Jesus Christ may be glorified in you . . .

b. When we pray, "Hallowed be Thy name," we are also asking God to bless us so that we His children lead a HOLY LIFE according to His Word.

### **295. How is God's name dishonored?**

#### **Bible passages:**

1136) Matthew 7:15 - "Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous wolves."

1137) Jeremiah 23:30,31 - "Therefore behold, I am against the prophets," says the LORD, "who steal My words every one from his neighbor. Behold I am against the prophets," says the LORD, "who use their tongues and say, 'He says.'"

1138) 2 Peter 2:1,2 - But there were also false prophets among the people, even as there will be false teachers among you . . . And many will follow their destructive ways, because of whom the way of truth will be blasphemed.

<p><b>Blaspheme:</b> to speak evil of; to curse what is God's</p>
---

1139) Ezekiel 36:23 - "And I will sanctify My great name, which has been profaned among the nations, which you have profaned in their midst; and the nations shall know that I am the LORD," says the Lord GOD, "when I am hallowed in you before their eyes."

God's name is dishonored when people do not teach His Word correctly or do not live according to it.



***(The Holy Spirit Gives us Faith.)***

“Thy kingdom come.”

***What does this mean?***

God’s kingdom certainly comes all by itself, even without our prayer, but we pray in this petition that it also come to us.

***How does the kingdom of God come?***

God’s kingdom comes when our heavenly Father gives us His Holy Spirit, so that by His grace we believe His holy Word and live a godly life here in time and hereafter in eternity.

**296. What is God’s kingdom?**

**Bible narratives:**

1140) Matthew 13 - The parables of Jesus describe what His kingdom is like.

**Bible passages:**

1141) Romans 14:17 - . . . for the kingdom of God is not food and drink, but righteousness and peace and joy in the Holy Spirit.

1142) John 18:36,37 - Jesus answered, “My kingdom is not of this world. If My kingdom were of this world, My servants would fight, so that I should not be delivered to the Jews; but now My kingdom is not from here.”

Pilate therefore said to Him, “Are You a king then?” Jesus answered, “You say rightly that I am a king. For this cause I was born, and for this cause I have come into the world, that I should bear witness to the truth. Everyone who is of the truth hears My voice.”

1143) Colossians 3:15,16 - And let the peace of God rule in your hearts . . . Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom, teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord.

God’s kingdom is His GRACIOUS RULE for the spiritual blessing and well-being of His people.

## **297. How does God's kingdom come to us?**

### **Bible passages:**

1144) Luke 24:47 - . . . and that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in His name to all nations . . .

1145) Romans 10:17 - So then faith comes by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.

1146) John 18:37 - "For this cause I was born, and for this cause I have come into the world, that I should bear witness to the truth. Everyone who is of the truth hears My voice."

- a. God's kingdom comes whenever the gospel is preached.  
(Missions)

-----

### **Bible passages:**

1147) 1 Corinthians 12:3 - . . . no one can say Jesus is Lord except by the Holy Spirit.

1148) John 3:5 - Unless one is born of water and the Spirit, he cannot enter the kingdom of God.

1149) Romans 14:17 - For the kingdom of God is not food and drink, but righteousness and peace and joy in the Holy Spirit.

- b. God's kingdom comes when the Holy Spirit works faith in the heart of those who hear the gospel.



***(What God Wants)***

“Thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven.”

***What does this mean?***

God’s good and gracious will is certainly done without our prayer, but we pray in this petition that it be done among us also.

***How is God’s will done?***

God’s will is done when He breaks and stops every evil will and plan of those who do not want us to hallow His name or let His kingdom come, such as the will of the devil, of the world, and of our own flesh. His will is also done when He gives us strength and keeps us firm in His Word and in faith for as long as we live. This is God’s good and gracious will.

**298. What is God’s WILL?**

God’s will is what He desires and wants.

**299. What does God want?**

**Bible passages:**

1150) Matthew 28:19,20 - “Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all things that I have commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age.”

1151) Jeremiah 23:28 - “. . .And he who has My word, let him speak My word faithfully.”

1152) 2 Timothy 4:2 - Preach the word!

- a. It is God’s will that His Word is preached, especially the Good News of forgiveness of sins in Jesus Christ.

-----

**Bible passages:**

- 1153) 1 Timothy 2:4 - [God our Savior] . . . desires all men to be saved and to come to the knowledge of the truth.
- 1154) 2 Peter 3:9 - The Lord . . . is not willing that any should perish but that all should come to repentance.
- 1155) John 6:40 - "And this is the will of Him who sent Me, that everyone who sees the Son and believes in Him may have everlasting life; and I will raise him up at the last day."

b. It is God's will that all people hear the gospel and believe it so they can be saved.

-----

**Bible passages:**

- 1156) 1 Thessalonians 4:3 - For this is the will of God, your sanctification . . .
- 1157) Romans 12:2 - And do not be conformed to this world, but be transformed by the renewing of your mind, that you may prove what is that good and acceptable and perfect will of God.
- 1158) Psalm 143:10 - Teach me to do Your will, for You are my God; Your Spirit is good. Lead me in the land of uprightness.

c. It is God's will that His people live holy lives.

**300. How is God's will done in heaven?**

**Bible passages:**

- 1159) Psalm 103:20 - Bless the LORD, you His angels, who excel in strength, who do His word, heeding the voice of His word.
- 1160) Matthew 18:10 - "Take heed that you do not despise one of these little ones, for I say to you that in heaven their angels always see the face of My Father who is in heaven."

God's will is always done in heaven by the good angels.



### 301. How is God's will opposed here on this earth?

#### Bible narratives:

- 1161) Genesis 3 - The devil caused Adam and Eve to contradict God's will.
- 1162) Matthew 4:1-11 - The devil tried to get Jesus to oppose the will of the heavenly Father.

#### Bible references:

- 1163) Revelation 12:9 - So the great dragon was cast out, that serpent of old, called the Devil and Satan, who deceives the whole world . . .
- 1164) 2 Corinthians 11:3 - But I fear, lest somehow, as the serpent deceived Eve by his craftiness, so your minds may be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ.
- 1165) 1 Peter 5:8 - Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil walks about like a roaring lion, seeking whom he may devour.

*Vigilant* : on the look-out  
*Adversary*: enemy

- a. God's will is opposed on earth by the devil and the evil angels.

-----

#### Bible passages:

- 1166) 1 John 2:15,16 - Do not love the world or the things in the world. If anyone loves the world, the love of the Father is not in him. For all that is in the world - the lust of the flesh, the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life - is not of the Father but is of the world.
- 1167) 1 John 5:19 - . . . the whole world lies under the sway of the wicked one.
- 1168) 1 Corinthians 15:33 - Do not be deceived, "Evil company corrupts good habits."

- b. God's will is opposed on earth by the sinful world.

*Carnal*: fleshly  
*Enmity*: hatred

-----

#### Bible passages:

- 1169) Romans 7:18 - For I know that in me (that is, in my flesh) nothing good dwells . . .
- 1170) Romans 8:7,8 - . . . the carnal mind is enmity against God . . . so then, those who are in the flesh cannot please God.

1171) Galatians 5:17 - For the flesh lusts against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh; and these are contrary to one another, so that you do not do the things that you wish.

c. God's will is opposed on earth by our own sinful nature.

### **302. How is God's will done among us?**

#### **Bible passages:**

1172) James 4:7 - Resist the devil and he will flee from you.

1173) 1 John 3:8 - For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that He might destroy the works of the devil.

a. God's will is done among us when we use the gospel to resist the devil, who has already lost.

-----

#### **Bible passages:**

1174) Galatians 1:4 - [Christ] gave Himself for our sins, that He might deliver us from this present evil age, according to the will of our God and Father . . . .

*Tribulation:* trouble, affliction, distress

1175) John 15:19 - "If you were of the world, the world would love its own . . . but I chose you out of the world . . ."

1176) John 16:33 - In the world you will have tribulation; but be of good cheer, I have overcome the world."

1177) Galatians 6:14 - But God forbid that I should glory except in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom the world has been crucified to me, and I to the world.

b. God's will is done among us when we use the gospel to resist the pressures and temptations of the sinful world.

**Bible passages:**

1178) Romans 6:6 - . . . knowing this, that our old man was crucified with Him, that the body of sin might be done away with, that we should no longer be slaves of sin.

1179) Matthew 16:24 - "If anyone desires to come after Me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow Me."  
(Christian cross)

c. God's will is done among us when we use the gospel to resist the influence and temptations of our own sinful natures.

-----

**Bible passages:**

1180) Luke 22:32 -" . . . I have prayed for you, that your faith should not fail."

1181) 1 Peter 1:5 - [We] are kept by the power of God through faith for salvation ready to be revealed in the last time.

1182) 1 Peter 5:10 - But may the God of all grace, who called us to His eternal glory by Christ Jesus, after you have suffered a while, perfect, establish, strengthen, and settle you.

1183) Hebrews 13:20 - Now may the God of peace . . . make you complete in every good work to do His will, working in you what is well pleasing in His sight, through Jesus Christ, to whom be the glory forever and ever. Amen.

d. God's will is done among us when He keeps us firm in His word and in faith for as long as we live.



***(God Provides for Our Bodily Welfare.)***

“Give us this day our daily bread.”

***What does this mean?***

God gives daily bread without our asking, even to unbelievers, but we pray in this petition that He would teach us to realize this and to receive our daily bread with thanksgiving.

***What is meant by daily bread?***

“Daily bread” means everything we need for our bodily well-being. It includes food, drink, clothes, shoes, house, home, land, animals, money and goods, a godly husband or wife, godly children, godly workers, godly and faithful leaders, good government, good weather, peace, health, education, honor, faithful friends, trustworthy neighbors – and things like that.



**303. What is “daily bread?”**

Daily bread is everything we need for our bodily life here on this earth.

**304. From whom do we receive our daily bread?**

**Bible passages:**

1184) James 1:17 - Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, and comes down from the Father of lights . . .

1185) Psalm 145:15,16 - The eyes of all look expectantly to You, and You give them their food in due season. You open Your hand and satisfy the desire of every living thing.

1186) Matthew 6:8 - “For your Father knows the things you have need of before you ask Him.”

We receive our daily bread from God.

### 305. To whom does God give daily bread?

#### Bible passages:

- 1187) Matthew 5:45 - . . . for He makes His sun rise on the evil and on the good, and sends rain on the just and on the unjust.
- 1188) Acts 14:17 - “Nevertheless He did not leave Himself without witness, in that He did good, gave us rain from heaven and fruitful seasons, filling our hearts with food and gladness.”
- 1189) Genesis 8:22 - “While the earth remains, seedtime and harvest, and cold and heat, and winter and summer, and day and night shall not cease.”
- 1190) Psalm 104:14 - He causes the grass to grow for the cattle, and vegetation for the service of man, that he may bring forth food from the earth . . .

God gives daily bread to everyone, including unbelievers.

### 306. Why does God give people their daily bread?

#### Bible narrative:

- 1191) Luke 12:15-21 - The rich young man learned that a man’s life does not consist in the abundance of his possessions.

#### Bible passages:

- 1192) Matthew 6:33 - “But seek first the kingdom of God and His righteousness, and all these things shall be added to you.”
- 1193) Acts 17:26,30 - And [God] has made from one blood every nation of men to dwell on all the face of the earth . . . Truly, these times of ignorance God overlooked, but now commands all men everywhere to repent.
- 1194) Matthew 4:4 - “Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceeds from the mouth of God.”

Of His great goodness God gives daily bread to people in order to preserve their lives during their time of grace.

*Time of grace:* period of our lives here on this earth during which God brings people His Word, especially the Gospel

**307. If we receive our daily bread anyway, why does Jesus teach us to pray for it?**

**Bible passages:**

- 1195) Psalm 107:1 - Oh, give thanks to the LORD, for He is good! For His mercy endures forever.
- 1196) Luke 11:3 - "Give us day by day our daily bread."
- 1197) 1 Peter 5:7 - . . . casting all your care upon Him, for He cares for you.
- 1198) 2 Thessalonians 3:10-12 - For even when we were with you, we commanded you this: if anyone will not work, neither shall he eat. For we hear that there are some who walk among you in a disorderly manner, not working at all, but are busybodies. Now those who are such we command and exhort through our Lord Jesus Christ that they work in quietness and eat their own bread.
- 1199) 1 Timothy 6:8 - And having food and clothing, with these we shall be content.

Jesus teaches us to pray for daily bread so that:

- a. We realize who gives us what we need for our bodily life.
- b. We thank Him for all that He gives us.
- c. We recognize our Savior's daily care of His people.
- d. We learn to be content with the "daily bread" our God gives to His people.



***(God Forgives Sins.)***

“And forgive us our trespasses  
as we forgive those who trespass against us.”

***What does this mean?***

We pray in this petition that our Father in heaven would not look on our sins or deny our prayer because of them.

We are not worthy of things for which we are asking, neither have we deserved them. However, we ask that our Father would by His grace give us what we ask; even though we sin often every day and indeed deserve nothing but punishment. We, too, will from our hearts gladly forgive and do good to all those who sin against us.

**308. What are we saying about ourselves when we pray this petition?**

**Bible passages:**

- 1200) Luke 15:21 - “Father, I have sinned against heaven and in your sight, and am no longer worthy to be called your son.”
- 1201) Psalm 51:3,4 - For I acknowledge my transgressions, and my sin is ever before me. Against You, You only, have I sinned, and done this evil in Your sight.
- 1202) Psalm 143:2 - Do not enter into judgment with Your servant, for in Your sight no one living is righteous.
- 1203) Genesis 32:10 - “I am not worthy of the least of all the mercies and of all the truth which You have shown Your servant . . .”

We confess that we are guilty of many sins and deserve punishment because of them.

### 309. What do we ask in this petition?

#### Bible passages:

- 1204) Psalm 51:1 - Have mercy upon me, O God, according to Your lovingkindness; according to the multitude of Your tender mercies, blot out my transgressions.
- 1205) Psalm 51:9 - Hide Your face from my sins, and blot out all my iniquities.
- 1206) Jeremiah 31:34 - "For I will forgive their iniquity, and their sin I will remember no more."
- 1207) Luke 11:4 - "And forgive us our sins, for we also forgive everyone who is indebted to us."

a. In this petition we ask God to forgive our sins.

*Forgive:* to take away;  
to send away

-----

#### Bible passages:

- 1208) Psalm 55:1 - Give ear to my prayer, O God, and do not hide Yourself from my supplication.
- 1209) Psalm 66:20 - Blessed be God, who has not turned away my prayer, nor His mercy from me!

b. We also ask that God would not deny our prayer because of our sins.

### 310. How do we show that we appreciate God's forgiving us?

#### Bible narrative:

- 1210) Matthew 18:15-35 - Jesus used a parable to tell about the importance of our forgiving one another.
- 1211) Genesis 50:15-21 - Joseph forgave his brothers for all the bad things they had done to him.

#### Bible passages:

- 1212) Matthew 6:14,15 - "For if you forgive men their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you. But if you do not forgive men their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses."
- 1213) Ephesians 4:32 - And be kind to one another, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, just as God in Christ also forgave you.

As we have been forgiven by our loving God, so we also gladly forgive those who sin against us.





***(God Helps Us Overcome Temptations.)***

“And lead us not into temptation.”

***What does this mean?***

God indeed tempts no one; but we pray in this petition that He would guard and keep us so that the devil, the world, and our flesh do not deceive us or lead us into misbelief, hopelessness, or any other shameful or sinful acts; and, although we are tempted by them, we ask that we win in the end and keep the victory.

**311. What is temptation?**

**Bible narratives:**

1214) Job 1 and 2 - Job’s faith was tested.

**Bible passages:**

1215) Genesis 22:1 - Now it came to pass after these things that God tested Abraham . . .

1216) John 6:5,6 - Then Jesus lifted up His eyes and seeing a great multitude coming toward Him, He said to Philip, “Where shall we buy bread, that these may eat?” But this He said to test him . . .

a. God tests His people from time to time to make their faith stronger.

-----  
**Bible narratives:**

1217) Genesis 3 - The devil tempted Eve and Adam to disobey God.

1218) Matthew 4:1-11 - Jesus was tempted by the devil to forget about dying to save sinners.

1219) 2 Samuel 11:1-12:23 - David was tempted into the sins of murder and adultery.

1220) John 13:2 - The devil tempted Judas to betray Jesus.

**Bible passages:**

1221) James 1:13-15 - Let no one say when he is tempted, "I am tempted by God"; for God cannot be tempted by evil, nor does He Himself tempt anyone. But each one is tempted when he is drawn away by his own desires and enticed. Then, when desire has conceived, it gives birth to sin; and sin, when it is full-grown, brings forth death.

1222) Proverbs 1:10 - My son, if sinners entice you, do not consent.

*Entice:* to lure into sin

1223) Revelation 12:9 - So the great dragon was cast out, that serpent of old, called the Devil and Satan, who deceives the whole world . . .

*Deceive:* to trick into sinning

b. In this petition temptation means any encouragement to sin. The devil creates a situation which makes sin look acceptable, attractive, and enjoyable.

**312. What are we asking for in this petition?**

**Bible passage:**

1224) 2 Thessalonians 3:3 - But the Lord is faithful, who will establish you and guard you from the evil one.

a. We ask God to keep temptation away from us.

-----

**Bible narrative:**

1225) Ephesians 6:10-17 - God provides the proper armor to repel the attacks of the devil.

1226) Romans 8:31-39 - Because of Christ's saving work we are convinced that nothing can separate us from the love of God in His Son.

**Bible passages:**

1227) 1 Corinthians 10:12,13 - Therefore let him who thinks he stands take heed lest he fall. No temptation has overtaken you except such as is common to man; but God is faithful, who will not allow you to be tempted beyond what you are able, but with the temptation will also make the way of escape, that you may be able to bear it.

1228) Matthew 26:41 - "Watch and pray, lest you enter into temptation. The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak."

1229) Hebrews 4:15 - For we do not have a High Priest who cannot sympathize with our weakness, but was in all points tempted as we are, yet without sin.

- b. When temptations come, we ask God to give us strength to reject the enemy attacks, so that we win in the end and keep the victory.



***(God Delivers Us from What Is Bad.)***

“But deliver us from evil.”

***What does this mean?***

We pray in this petition that our Father in heaven would deliver us from every evil to body and soul, property and reputation, and finally, when our last hour comes, give us a joyful end and graciously take us from this valley of sorrows to Himself in heaven.



**313. What is meant by EVIL?**

**Bible narratives:**

- 1230) Genesis 3:16-24 - God removed Adam and Eve from Paradise after they sinned. He also added sorrows and difficulties to their life.
- 1231) Job 1 and 2 - Job suffered the loss of family and property.
- 1232) Romans 8:18-23 - The whole creation suffers because of human sin.

**Bible passages:**

- 1233) 2 Corinthians 4:8 - We are hard pressed on every side. . .
- 1234) Luke 6:45 - “. . . an evil man out of the evil treasure of his heart brings forth evil.”
- 1235) 1 John 5:19 - The whole world lies under the sway of the wicked one.
- 1236) Matthew 9:4 - But Jesus, knowing their thoughts, said, “Why do you think evil in your hearts?”

Evil is everything bad that happens to people, or that is thought or done because of sin.

### 314. What do we ask of God in this petition?

#### Bible passage:

1237) Psalm 91:10 - No evil shall befall you, nor shall any plague come near your dwelling.

a. We ask God to keep evil away from us.

*Tribulation:* trouble

-----

#### Bible passages:

1238) Acts 14:22 - "We must through many tribulations enter the kingdom of God."

1239) Hebrews 12:6 - For whom the LORD loves He chastens, and scourges every son whom He receives.

1240) Romans 8:28 - And we know that all things work together for good to those who love God, to those who are the called according to His purpose.

1241) 2 Corinthians 4:17 - For our light affliction, which is but for a moment, is working for us a far more exceeding and eternal weight of glory.

1242) Matthew 16:24 - "If anyone desires to come after Me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow Me."

1243) 1 Peter 5:10 - But may the God of all grace, who called us to His eternal glory by Christ Jesus, after you have suffered a while, perfect, establish, strengthen, and settle you.

b. We ask God to use the difficulties and hardships of our lives for our good.

-----

#### Bible passages:

1244) 2 Timothy 4:18 - And the Lord will deliver me from every evil work and preserve me for His heavenly kingdom.

1245) Philippians 1:23 - For I am hard pressed between the two, having a desire to depart and be with Christ, which is far better.

1246) Revelation 21:4 - And God will wipe away every tear from their eyes; there shall be no more death, nor sorrow, nor crying; and there shall be no more pain, for the former things have passed away.

c. We ask God to give us a joyful end and take us from the evil of this world to Himself in His heavenly kingdom.



***(God Gets All the Credit.)***

“For Thine is the kingdom and the power  
and the glory forever and ever.  
Amen.”

**315. Who receives all the credit for our spiritual life  
and salvation?**

**Bible passages:**

1247) Philippians 2:13 - . . .for it is God who works in you both  
to will and to do for His good pleasure.

1248) Revelation 7:10-12 - “Salvation  
belongs to our God who sits on  
the throne, and to the Lamb!”

*Doxology:* word of  
glory or praise

And all the angels . . . worshiped  
God, saying, “Amen! Blessing and glory and wisdom,  
thanksgiving and honor and power and might, be to our  
God forever and ever. Amen.”

The Triune God receives all the credit for our spiritual life and  
salvation. We honor Him with our thanks.



*What does "Amen" mean?*

"Amen" means  
that I should be certain that these petitions are really heard  
by the Father in heaven; for He Himself has instructed us  
to pray in this way and promised that He will hear us.  
"Amen! amen!" that is,  
"Yes, indeed, it shall be so."

**316. Why do we say, "Amen," at the end of this and other prayers?**

**Bible passages:**

- 1249) 1 John 5:14 - Now this is the confidence that we have in Him, that if we ask anything according to His will, He hears us.
- 1250) John 16:23 - Most assuredly, I say to you, whatever you ask the Father in My name He will give you. (For "Most assuredly" the King James Version has "Verily, verily, . . . "; the words in the original are "Amen, amen.")
- 1251) 2 Timothy 1:12 - . . .for I know whom I have believed and am persuaded that He is able to keep what I have committed to Him until that Day.
- 1252) Romans 8:38,39 - For I am persuaded that neither death nor life, nor angels nor principalities nor powers, nor things present nor things to come, nor height nor depth, nor any other created thing, shall be able to separate us from the love of God which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

When we say "Amen," we express that we are sure that God hears our prayers and answers them.

**TO GOD ALONE  
BELONGS THE GLORY!**





Completion information	-----
The Ten Commandments	-----
The Apostles' Creed	-----
The Sacrament of Holy Baptism	-----
The Office of the Keys and Confession	-----
The Sacrament of the Altar	-----
The Lord's Prayer	-----
Daily Prayers	-----
Table of Duties	-----
Christian Questions	-----
The Life of Dr. Martin Luther	-----

---

# **P E R S O N A L F A M I L Y I N F O R M A T I O N**

---

**N A M E S O F C O N F I R M A T I O N C L A S S M A T E S**

**ABORTION.** The killing of an unborn baby. . . . . 59

**ABSOLVE.** To announce the forgiveness of sins. Absolution. . . . . 259

**ADMONITION.** A warning, especially when one is in spiritual danger. . . . . 47

**ADULTERY.** Sexual sins, especially of those who are married . . . . . 70

**AGNOSTIC.** A person who does not know if there is a God and  
does not believe there is a way to find out. . . . . 115

**AMEN.** Yes. So shall it be. Truly. . . . . 316

**ANGELS.** Spirit beings created by God. . . . . 117

**APOSTLE.** A person specially “sent,” a special representative.  
The title is used to describe the 12 disciples of Jesus, Paul,  
and only a few others. . . . . 109

**ASCEND.** To go up. The ascension of Christ refers to His “ascending into heaven”  
so that He was no longer able to be seen by His disciples. . . . . 160

**ATHEIST.** A person who says there is no God. . . . . 29, 115

**ATONE.** To set things right; to set things straight.  
Christ atoned--set things right--between God and mankind  
by dying to save human beings from their sins. . . . . 150

**ATTRIBUTE.** A characteristic of anyone or of God. . . . . 111, 134, 174

-----

**BAPTISM.** A sacrament in which water is used in connection with God’s word. . . . . 222

**BAPTIZE.** To apply water. . . . . 223

**BELIEVE.** To trust and rely completely upon God. . . . . 114

**BELIEVER.** One who trusts in Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of his or her sins. . . . . 114

**BETRAY.** To tell someone’s secrets. . . . . 85

**BIBLE.** Book. This word is used most often to describe God’s Book. . . . . 6ff

**BLASPHEME.** To curse and make fun of God. . . . . 34, 295

<b>CAPITAL PUNISHMENT.</b> The execution of a person guilty of a serious crime (murder, for example). . . . .	58
<b>CATECHISM.</b> A handbook of instruction, usually of Bible teachings. Introduction. . . . .	1
<b>CHRIST.</b> The Anointed One. Hebrew--the Messiah. The title and official name of our Savior. . . . .	141
<b>CHRISTIAN.</b> One who believes in Christ for the forgiveness of his or her sins. Believer. . . . .	191
<b>CHURCH.</b> A group specially "called out." The Holy Christian Church is the group of all the believers wherever they are in the world. . . . .	188
<b>CHURCH DISCIPLINE.</b> What Christians do to help a fellow believer who has sinned. . . . .	249
<b>CHURCH FELLOWSHIP.</b> The sharing of worship and joint church work. . . . .	197
<b>CLOSE COMMUNION.</b> The confession of our church that those who commune together share the same confession of faith. They are close, that is, near, to each other. . . . .	278
<b>COMMUNION.</b> A "coming together into one." This word is often used to refer to the sacrament of the Lord's Supper. . . . .	188, 192, 262
<b>CONCEIVE.</b> To start a (human) being. . . . .	136
<b>CONDEMN.</b> To declare, "Guilty." . . . .	209
<b>CONFESS.</b> To say openly; to admit. Confession. It is used especially of one's faith (as in a creed); or of one's sins. . . . .	256
<b>CONFIRMATION.</b> A strengthening. It is a custom of the church in which a person "confirms" his or her baptismal vow by making his or her own confession of faith. . . . .	
<b>CONSCIENCE.</b> The inner voice which makes us feel good when we are doing something right and makes us feel bad when we are doing something wrong. . . . .	3
<b>CONTRITION.</b> Sorrow for sins. . . . .	240
<b>CONVERSION.</b> The act of "turning" an unbeliever into a believer. . . . .	178
<b>COVET.</b> To have a sinful desire. . . . .	91
<b>CREATE.</b> To make something out of nothing. . . . .	116
<b>CREED.</b> A statement of faith - of what one believes. . . . .	109
<b>CRUCIFY.</b> To execute by putting a criminal on a cross. Crucifixion. . . . .	153
<b>CURSE.</b> To wish evil. . . . .	34

---

<b>DAMNATION.</b> The punishment of unbelievers in hell. . . . .	214
<b>DEATH.</b> Separation; the consequence of sin. See Romans 6:23. . . . .	102
<b>DECEIVE.</b> To trick, especially in a sinful way. . . . .	311
<b>DENOMINATION.</b> A group of congregations which share a distinctive doctrine. . . . .	196
<b>DESPISE.</b> To have no respect for. . . . .	40

**DEVIL.** The chief fallen angel, also called Satan. Devils - a name for the fallen angels. . 311  
**DISCIPLE.** A student. In the Bible the word disciple usually refers to a follower of Jesus. 287  
**DIVORCE.** The end of a marriage other than by the death of a spouse. . . . . 70  
**DOCTRINE.** A teaching, especially of the Bible. . . . . 13

-----

**ENGAGEMENT.** A promise to be married. . . . . 68  
**ENLIGHTEN.** To “turn the light on.” This word describes how the Spirit teaches us about the death of Christ, the forgiveness of our sins, and the many gifts He gives His people to aid in their use and preaching of the gospel. . . . . 181  
**ENMITY.** Hatred. . . . . 170, 301  
**EPISTLE.** Letter. As in the epistles of Paul. . . . . 8  
**ETERNAL.** Timeless - used to describe God and to tell of the believers life with Him after Judgment Day. . . . . 111, 215  
**ETERNAL LIFE.** The timeless fellowship of believers with Christ in Heaven. . . . . 215  
**ETERNAL DEATH.** The timeless separation of unbelievers from Christ in hell. . . 102, 214  
**EVANGELIST.** A speaker or writer of good news. It is often used to refer to the writers of the Gospels in the New Testament. . . . . 7  
**EVOLUTION.** A false theory of origins. . . . . 121  
**EXALTATION.** The state of Christ’s life when He was restored to full use of His divine powers. . . . . 155  
**EXCOMMUNICATE.** To end the communion, or fellowship. Excommunication. This word describes the action of a church regarding one of its members who is obviously impenitent. . . . . 252

-----

**FAITH.** The act of believing. Trust. . . . . 114  
**FALL OF MAN.** A phrase used to describe the time when Adam and Eve “fell” into sin. See Genesis 3. . . . . 98  
**FALSE PROPHET.** A person who teaches anything contrary to the word of God. . . . 201  
**FALSE WITNESS.** Any talk which comes out of a “false” or hateful heart. . . . . 84  
**FATHER.** The first person of God, equal to the Son and the Holy Spirit. . . . . 112  
**FELLOWSHIP.** A sharing; a communion. See Church Fellowship. . . . . 197  
**FLESH.** The sinful nature of a human being. . . . . 98, 238  
**FORGIVE.** To get rid of; to take away. Forgiveness. The Bible speaks of the forgiveness of sins won on the cross through the death of Jesus Christ. . . 207, 309  
**FORNICATION.** All manner of sexual sins; sexual sins especially of the unmarried. . . . 70

**GOD.** The Almighty One. The true God is the Triune God described in the Bible. . . . . 26

**GOSPEL.** Good News. The word is used in the Bible to describe the good news about the love of God in Christ Jesus, who died on the cross to save all people from their sins. . . . . 16

**GRACE.** Undeserved kindness; a special favor. The word is used of God's special love in sending Jesus to be the Savior. . . . . 18, 219

**GUILT.** The fact of having done something wrong against the law. Guilty. Guilt is also the feeling our conscience gives us when we know we've done something wrong. . . . . 209

-----

**HALLOW.** To set apart; to consecrate; to keep holy. . . . . 292

**HEAVEN.** The Bible used this word to describe the eternal life of the believers with Jesus. The word is also used to simply speak of the sky. . . . . 216

**HELL.** The abode of the fallen angels and of the unbelievers. . . . . 214

**HERESY.** False teaching. . . . . 203

**HETERODOX.** Other teaching. The word describes an individual or church body which teaches contrary to the word of God. . . . . 202

**HIGH PRIEST.** In the Old Testament the individual selected to offer the most important sacrifices for God's people. Christ as our High Priest sacrificed Himself on the cross for the sins of all. . . . . 143

**HOLY.** Set apart from sin. Sinless. . . . . 111, 175

**HOLY SPIRIT.** The third person of God, equal to the Father and the Son. . . . . 173

**HUMILIATION.** The state of Christ's life when He chose not to use His divine powers fully. . . . . 153

**HYPOCRITE.** An unbeliever who pretends to be a believer. . . . . 34

-----

**IDOLATRY.** The worship of false gods. . . . . 28

**IMAGE OF GOD.** A phrase used in the Bible to tell how God created human beings like Him in righteousness, holiness, and perfect knowledge. . . . . 120

**IMMORALITY.** Evil; sin; especially sexual sins. . . . . 70

**IMMORTALITY.** Never dying. . . . . 120, 151

**IMPENITENT.** A spiritual state in which a person is not sorry for his or her sin(s) and does not believe in Jesus for forgiveness. . . . . 245

**INCARNATION.** Getting a body. . . . . 136

**INSPIRE.** To breathe into. Inspiration. God breathed into the holy writers the words He wanted in the Bible. . . . . 9

**INTERCEDE.** To go between; to do something in another's behalf. . . . . 143

**INVISIBLE.** Can't be seen. . . . . 116



**JUSTIFY.** To declare "Not guilty"; the verdict of a judge. Justification. . . . . 207

**KEYS.** Tools used to lock and unlock. Jesus gave His disciples the keys of the kingdom with the power to lock and unlock heaven. . . . . 243

**KING.** One who rules. . . . . 144

**KINGDOM OF GOD.** The gracious rule of God. . . . . 296



**LAW.** The word of God which tells us what to do and what not to do and the punishment for breaking it. . . . . 14



**MAN.** The foremost of God's visible creation. . . . . 118, 120

**MARRIAGE.** The union of a man and a woman rightfully living together as husband and wife. . . . . 64

**MEANS OF GRACE.** Tools the Holy Spirit uses to create and preserve faith. The Means of Grace is the gospel in word and sacrament. . . . . 176, 243

**MERCY.** Pity; a feeling of being sorry for someone. . . . . 105

**MESSIAH.** See Christ. . . . . 141

**MINISTER.** To serve. It is also a noun meaning servant. Pastors are sometimes called ministers.

**MIRACLE.** A supernatural act. . . . . 124

**MISSION WORK.** The activity of preaching the gospel especially to those who have not heard it yet. . . . . 200

**MORTAL.** Subject to death. Dying.



**NATURAL LAW.** The knowledge of the law which God wrote into human hearts. Romans 2:15 . . . . . 25

**NATURAL MEANS.** God preserves His creation normally through the laws of nature.. 124

**NEIGHBOR.** One's fellow man. . . . . 24

**NEW MAN.** The new spiritual nature created by the Holy Spirit. . . . . 241

<b>OATH.</b> A solemn request that God listen to what we say and punish us if we do not tell the truth. . . . .	34
<b>OFFICES of Christ.</b> These are the tasks of His mission: Prophet, Priest, and King. . . .	141
<b>OLD ADAM.</b> The sinful nature of human beings. . . . .	238
<b>OMNIPOTENT.</b> All powerful; almighty. . . . .	111
<b>OMNIPRESENT.</b> Present everywhere. . . . .	111
<b>OMNISCIENT.</b> All knowing. . . . .	111
<b>ORIGINAL SIN.</b> The sin which every human being inherits from his or her parents. . . .	98
<b>ORTHODOX.</b> Straight teaching. It describes a church which teaches the word of God in its truth and purity. . . . .	140

---

<b>PASTOR.</b> Shepherd; the title used of a person in the public parish ministry . . . . .	247
<b>PENITENT.</b> A spiritual state in which a person is sorry for his or her sins and believes in Jesus for the forgiveness of sins. . . . .	246
<b>PERJURY.</b> Lying after swearing to tell the truth. . . . .	34
<b>PERSONAL JUSTIFICATION.</b> Believing that God has declared me "Not guilty." . . . .	210
<b>PRAISE.</b> To honor, especially of God in worship. . . . .	35
<b>PRAYER.</b> A heart-to-heart talk with God. . . . .	35, 280
<b>PRESERVE.</b> To keep or make something last. God preserves His creation. Preservation. . . .	123
<b>PRIEST.</b> Sacrificer. . . . .	143
<b>PROPHET.</b> One who "speaks for" someone else; a mouthpiece. . . . .	142
<b>PROPITIATION.</b> Satisfactory payment. . . . .	143

---

<b>RANSOM.</b> A price paid to set someone free. . . . .	147
<b>REAL PRESENCE.</b> A phrase which describes the Bible teaching that Christ's body and blood are really present with the bread and wine in the Sacrament of Holy Communion. . . . .	265
<b>RECONCILE.</b> To make friends; to make peace. Reconciliation. . . . .	207
<b>REDEEM.</b> To buy back. Redemption. Ransom. . . . .	145
<b>REGENERATE.</b> To be "born again" from an unbeliever to a believer. . . . .	178
<b>RELIGIOUS UNIONISM.</b> A sharing of worship and joint church work by those who do not agree on what the Bible teaches. . . . .	202
<b>REPENTANCE.</b> Sorrow for sins and faith in Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of sins. . . . .	87, 240, 249



<b>REPRESENTATION.</b> A false teaching of Holy Communion which says that the bread and wine only represent Christ's body and blood. . . . .	265
<b>RESURRECTION.</b> Coming to life after being dead. . . . .	158, 213
<b>RIGHTEOUS.</b> Those who believe that God has declared them "Not guilty." . . .	143, 150

-----

<b>SABBATH.</b> "Rest." In the Old Testament the Sabbath Day was Saturday. . . . .	38
<b>SACRAMENT.</b> A sacred act, instituted by Christ, using earthly elements to give spiritual blessings. . . . .	176, 221
<b>SACRIFICE.</b> An offering to God to atone for one's sins. . . . .	143
<b>SAINT.</b> A holy one; one set apart from sin by the power of the Holy Spirit. . . . .	192
<b>SALVATION.</b> The state of being saved; the eternal inheritance of the believers. . . .	215
<b>SANCTIFY.</b> To set apart from sin. Sanctification. The word is used to describe the work of the Holy Spirit. . . . .	175
<b>SANCTIFICATION.</b> Wide sense - everything the Holy Spirit does to create and preserve faith; narrow sense - everything the Holy Spirit does to produce in believers the fruits of faith. . . . .	175
<b>SATAN.</b> The name of the chief of the fallen angels. . . . .	130
<b>SCRIPTURE(S).</b> What is written. It is another word for the Bible. . . . .	5
<b>SIN.</b> Breaking God's law. . . . .	15, 97
<b>SON.</b> The second person of God, equal to the Father and the Holy Ghost. . . . .	134
<b>SOUL.</b> The life-part of our being which when united with the body makes us a human being with the ability to think, feel, and desire. . . . .	102
<b>SPIRIT.</b> A being without a body. . . . .	110
<b>SPIRITUAL DEATH.</b> The separation of an individual from God; the spiritual state of an unbeliever. . . . .	102
<b>SPONSOR.</b> A person who is asked not only to witness a baptism but also be concerned about the child's spiritual welfare. . . . .	231
<b>SPOUSE.</b> A marriage partner. . . . .	63
<b>STATES of Christ's life:</b> the state of humiliation and the state of exaltation. 2nd Article. . . . .	152ff
<b>SWEAR.</b> To take an oath. . . . .	34
<b>TEMPORAL DEATH.</b> The separation of a body and soul. . . . .	102
<b>TEMPT.</b> To test; to create a situation which makes sin or unbelief appear attractive and desirable. Temptation. A seduction to sin. . . . .	311

**TIME OF GRACE.** The period of one’s life on this earth during which God confronts him or her with the gospel. . . . . 56, 306

**TRANSUBSTANTIATION.** A false teaching of Holy Communion which says that the bread and wine actually change into Christ’s body and blood. . . . . 265

**TRIBULATION.** Suffering; trouble. . . . . 126, 302, 314

**TRINITY.** Three-in-one. There are three persons in one God. . . . . 26

**TRIUNE.** See Trinity

**TWO NATURES of Christ** – that He was both true God and true man. . . . . 137

-----

**UNBELIEVER.** One who does not believe in Jesus for the forgiveness of his or her sins 115

**UNIVERSAL JUSTIFICATION.** God declared the whole world “Not guilty” of their sins 208

-----

**VERBAL INSPIRATION.** “Word by word.” God breathed into the holy writers the very words He wanted in the Bible . . . . . 9

**VICARIOUS ATONEMENT.** Vicarious means substitute. The phrase describes the work of Christ, who as our substitute did what was necessary to set things right between God and man by dying on the cross to save us from our sins . . . . . 150

-----

**WORD OF GOD.** See Bible.

**WORSHIP.** The activity of believers who respond in honor and praise to the great things God has done for them in Christ; to adore. . . . . 41, 42

INDEX OF BIBLE PASSAGES AND REFERENCES

**Genesis** 1..... 81  
 1 & 2..... 478  
 1:1 ..... 479, 495  
 1:2 ..... 729  
 1:26..... 487, 730  
 1:27..... 492  
 1:27,28..... 488  
 1:28..... 303  
 2:7..... 245,489  
 2:17..... 408  
 2:18..... 288, 296  
 2:18-25..... 292  
 2:24..... 289, 299  
 3..... 1161, 1217  
 3:1-19..... 408, 531, 534  
 3:15..... 539, 649  
 3:16-24..... 1230  
 3:19..... 907  
 4:2-15..... 267  
 6:5..... 422  
 8:21..... 394  
 8:22..... 511, 1189  
 9:3 ..... 512  
 9:6 ..... 250, 258  
 14:12-16 ..... 277  
 17:1 ..... 443  
 22:1 ..... 1215  
 22:1-19 ..... 93  
 23 ..... 327  
 32:10 ..... 1203  
 37:11-35 ..... 272  
 39:1-6 ..... 224  
 39:1-9 ..... 89

39:1-23..... 311  
 39:9..... 92, 312  
 41:33-40..... 349  
 45..... 227  
 45:8..... 210  
 50:15-21..... 279, 1211  
 50:20..... 522  
  
**Exodus** 2:1-10 ..... 518  
 4:11 ..... 502  
 5 ..... 139  
 14 ..... 519  
 20:1-17..... 40, 59  
 20:2 ..... 130  
 20:6 ..... 66  
 20:7 ..... 138  
 20:9-11 ..... 175  
 20:11 ..... 480  
 20:24 .... 136, 1124, 1127  
 21:18-27..... 273  
 21:29 ..... 269  
 31:13 ..... 176  
 32 ..... 105  
 32:10 ..... 1203  
 34:5,6 ..... 1126  
 34:6,7 ..... 453  
 34:28 ..... 61  
  
**Leviticus** 16..... 608  
 19:2 ..... 39, 381, 448  
 19:12 ..... 151  
 19:32 ..... 230  
 19:35 ..... 343

23:3 ..... 177  
 24:15 ..... 141  
  
**Numbers** 6:24-26..... 87  
 21:4-9..... 1076  
  
**Deuteronomy** 4:2..... 27  
 5:1-22..... 60  
 5:18 ..... 309  
 6:4 ..... 836  
 6,7 ..... 212, 856  
 6:13,15 ..... 423  
 7:7-10..... 404  
 7:9 ..... 426  
 8:18 ..... 328  
 10:12,13 ..... 429  
 18:10-12..... 154  
 18:15 ..... 601  
 32:4 ..... 449  
 32:39 ..... 256, 266  
 33:27 ..... 441  
  
**1 Samuel** 2:22-25... 220  
 3 ..... 225  
 12:24..... 528  
 16:7 ..... 829  
 17 ..... 515  
 17:32-50..... 97  
 17:43 ..... 142  
 20:30-32 ..... 366  
 24:1-7 ..... 226  
 28 ..... 152  
 31:4 ..... 264

**2 Samuel** 11..... 308  
 11:1-12:23..... 1219  
 11:2-17..... 268  
 12:1-14..... 372  
 12:1-23..... 42  
 12:13..... 1040  
 12:15-23..... 975  
 15:1-6..... 363  
 15:1-12..... 221  
 16:5-8..... 143  
 18:14-17..... 221

**1 Kings** 21:1-16148, 332, 377  
 17:1-16..... 509  
 19:9-18..... 828

**1 Chronicles** 29:10 . 461

**Job** 1 & 2 ..... 1214, 1231  
 1:21..... 325  
 19:25,26..... 919  
 38:4..... 497

**Psalms** 14:1..... 473  
 16:10..... 679  
 19:1..... 2  
 19:12..... 1035  
 24:1..... 324  
 25:1..... 1091  
 26:8..... 198  
 31:15..... 257  
 32:1..... 885  
 32:5..... 1042  
 33:8..... 90  
 36:6..... 505

37:5..... 100  
 37:21..... 341  
 37:25..... 507  
 42:2..... 439  
 46:4..... 813  
 48:10..... 1131  
 49:7..... 592, 634  
 50:15..... 162, 1101  
 50:19,20..... 365  
 51:1..... 1208  
 51:3,4... 987, 1028, 1201  
 51:4..... 1034  
 51:5..... 393, 959  
 51:9..... 1205  
 51:10..... 319, 382  
 51:13..... 747  
 51:17..... 988, 1010  
 55:1..... 1208  
 62:10..... 120  
 65:2..... 1093  
 66:20..... 1209  
 73:25,26..... 95  
 78:4..... 855  
 78:22..... 468, 475  
 82:5..... 716  
 84:12..... 102  
 90:2..... 440  
 91:10..... 1237  
 91:10,11..... 517  
 95:6,7..... 62  
 100:1,2..... 704  
 103:1,2..... 346  
 103:1,3..... 135  
 103:11..... 427  
 103:13..... 525  
 103:20..... 1159  
 103:20,21..... 485

104:14..... 513, 1190  
 106:1..... 527  
 107:1..... 1102, 1195  
 112:1..... 428  
 115:1..... 1128  
 115:3,4..... 108  
 115:6..... 1095  
 115:11..... 101  
 118:1..... 170  
 118:8..... 103  
 119:9..... 76  
 119:32..... 53  
 119:103-105..... 875  
 119:105..... 21, 75, 790  
 119:120..... 424  
 122:1..... 197  
 124:8..... 104  
 127:3..... 301  
 128:2..... 329  
 128:3..... 302  
 130:1..... 163  
 139:1-4..... 446  
 139:7,8..... 726  
 139:13,14..... 501  
 139:14..... 490  
 143:2..... 1202  
 143:10..... 1158  
 145:9..... 451  
 145:15,16..... 506, 1185  
 145:18,19..... 1090  
 147:11..... 797

**Proverbs** 1:10  
 ..... 320, 1222  
 3:5..... 123  
 8:13..... 91  
 10:12..... 370

11:13..... 361  
 13:13..... 1005  
 13:24..... 234  
 19:5..... 357  
 22:1..... 353  
 22:2..... 326  
 23:20,31-33..... 260  
 23:22..... 229  
 24:17..... 283  
 25:9..... 362  
 30:5..... 195  
 30:11,17..... 222  
 31:8,9..... 369

**Ecclesiastes** 5:1 ..... 188  
 7:1 ..... 354  
 12:7..... 909

**Song of Solomon** .. 297

**Isaiah** 7:14 ..... 581  
 42:8..... 82, 110, 131,  
 ..... 405, 1123  
 43:11..... 64, 406  
 43:21..... 169  
 44:6-20..... 106  
 44:8..... 407, 1094  
 49:26..... 63  
 51:12..... 771  
 53:5,6 ..... 639  
 53:6 ..... 896  
 55:10,11 ..... 831  
 59:2 ..... 417, 1031  
 61:1 ..... 602  
 64:6 ..... 431

**Jeremiah** 14:14 ..... 156  
 17:5 ..... 125  
 23:6 ..... 134  
 23:24 ..... 447  
 23:28 ..... 1130, 1151  
 23:30,31 ..... 1137  
 23:31 ..... 155, 866  
 31:34 ..... 887, 1206

**Lamentations** 3:22,23,524

**Ezekiel** 18:4..... 416  
 36:23 ..... 1139

**Daniel** 1:17..... 503  
 2:1-45 ..... 615  
 3 ..... 140  
 3:1-18 ..... 88, 99  
 6:1-23 ..... 98  
 6:16-23..... 516  
 12:2 ..... 914

**Amos** 3:3 ..... 847

**Micah** 7:19 ..... 888

**Zechariah** 8:17 ..... 355

**Malachi** 3:6 ..... 442

**Matthew** 1:21 . 132, 595  
 1:18-25..... 579  
 1:23 ..... 549  
 2:1-12..... 331  
 3:16,17 ..... 79  
 3:17 ..... 543

4:1-11 ... 126, 1162, 1218  
 4:2 ..... 573  
 4:4 ..... 1194  
 4:10 ..... 111, 181, 1092  
 5:14,16 ..... 1133  
 5:22 ..... 276  
 5:23,24 ..... 1038  
 5:28 ..... 307  
 5:33-37 ..... 150  
 5:44 ..... 253  
 5:45 ..... 462, 1187  
 6:5-8 ..... 1105  
 6:8 ..... 1186  
 6:9-13 ..... 1116  
 6:12 ..... 1036  
 6:14,15 ..... 1212  
 6:20,21 ..... 350  
 6:24 ..... 119  
 6:25-34 ..... 491, 504  
 6:33 ..... 1192  
 7:7 ..... 165, 1097  
 7:8 ..... 1098  
 7:11 ..... 1121  
 7:15 ..... 157, 870, 1136  
 8:2 ..... 1112  
 8:23-27 ..... 557  
 9:2 ..... 884, 1043  
 9:4 ..... 1236  
 9:6 ..... 560  
 10:28 ..... 419  
 10:37 ..... 118, 240  
 11:27 ..... 459  
 11:28 ..... 1088  
 13 ..... 1140  
 13:22 ..... 189  
 15:7-8..... 161

15:9 ..... 159, 867  
 15:19 ..... 271, 400, 984  
 16:16 ..... 550  
 16:19 ..... 997, 999, 1025  
 16:24 ..... 1179, 1242  
 16:26 ..... 635  
 18:3 ..... 745  
 18:6 ..... 961  
 18:10 ..... 1160  
 18:11 ..... 569  
 18:15 ..... 374  
 18:15-17 ..... 250  
 18:15-20 ..... 1026  
 18:15-35 ..... 1210  
 18:18,20 ..... 1001  
 18:19 ..... 852  
 18:20 ..... 834  
 19:4-9 ..... 293

**Matthew** 19:5,6 ..... 291

19:6 ..... 295  
 19:9 ..... 314  
 19:16-22 ..... 116  
 19:26 ..... 444  
 20:28 ..... 633  
 21:22 ..... 1107  
 22:19-21 ..... 243  
 22:21 ..... 338  
 22:37 ..... 68, 94  
 22:37,39 ..... 49  
 22:39 ..... 69, 252  
 23:33 ..... 917  
 23:37 ..... 757  
 24:36-39 ..... 688  
 24:36 ..... 691  
 24:36-51 ..... 686  
 24:44 ..... 694, 931

25:1-13 ..... 693  
 25:31-46 ..... 689, 695  
 25:34 ..... 924  
 25:41,46 ..... 420, 916  
 26:14-16 ..... 360  
 26:17-30 ..... 1044  
 26:26,27 ..... 1048, 1055  
 26:26-28 ..... 944, 1075  
 26:28 ..... 1051, 1065  
 26:29 ..... 1049  
 26:41 ..... 1228  
 26:56 ..... 36, 37  
 26:57-68 ..... 656  
 26:59-61 ..... 356  
 26:63,64 ..... 146  
 27:5 ..... 265  
 27:50 ..... 577  
 28 ..... 666  
 28:18 ..... 685  
 28:18,19 ..... 945, 963  
 28:18-20 ..... 607, 862  
 28:19 ..... 85, 454, 722,  
 ..... 949, 953, 957  
 28:19-20 ..... 832, 1150  
 28:20 ..... 554

**Mark** 1:8 ..... 946

1:15 ..... 709  
 4:38 ..... 574  
 6:21-28 ..... 149  
 7:4 ..... 947  
 7:31-37 ..... 558  
 7:37 ..... 285  
 10:24 ..... 121  
 10:45 ..... 661  
 11:24 ..... 1110  
 14:12-26 ..... 1045

14:22-24 ..... 1057  
 15:1-20 ..... 657  
 16 ..... 667  
 16:15 ..... 168, 604, 1017  
 16:16 ..... 697, 915, 923,  
 ..... 969, 972, 974  
**Luke** 1:26-38 .. 578 , 654  
 1:30,31 ..... 544  
 1:35 ..... 582  
 1:50 ..... 425  
 1:74,75 ..... 703  
 2:1-21 ..... 580, 655  
 2:10,11 ..... 48, 435  
 2:11 ..... 548, 583  
 2:12 ..... 571  
 2:41-52 ..... 241  
 2:52 ..... 572  
 4:14-21 ..... 1015  
 4:16-30 ..... 200, 599  
 6:12 ..... 173  
 6:45 ..... 1234  
 7:1-5 ..... 367  
 8:25 ..... 555  
 10:16 ..... 187, 606, 1027  
 10:25-37 ..... 278  
 10:29-37 ..... 251  
 10:38-40 ..... 179  
 11:2 ..... 1117  
 11:3 ..... 1196  
 11:4 ..... 1207  
 11:13 ..... 1114  
 11:24 ..... 1110  
 11:28 ..... 196  
 12:15 ..... 351, 1191  
 12:15-21 ..... 1191  
 15:10 ..... 1023  
 15:21 ..... 1200

16:19-31 ..... 22, 247  
 11:28 ..... 24, 33  
 15:21 ..... 1030, 1200  
 16:29 ..... 34  
 17:3 ..... 375  
 17:21 ..... 617  
 18:9-14 ..... 430  
 18:15-17 ..... 962  
 22:7-23 ..... 1046  
 22:19 ..... 1050, 1059  
 22:19,20 ..... 1066  
 22:32 ..... 807, 1180  
 22:42 ..... 1113  
 23:39-43 ..... 973  
 24 ..... 668  
 24:26 ..... 663  
 24:32 ..... 31  
 24:39 ..... 570  
 24:47 ..... 1018, 1144  
 24:50,51 ..... 681

**John** 1:1 ..... 547, 553  
 1:3 ..... 561  
 1:14 ..... 586  
 John 1:17: ..... 38  
 1:18 ..... 438  
 1:29 ..... 593, 610,  
 ..... 636, 893  
 2:1-11 ..... 556  
 3:1-16 ..... 748  
 3:1-18 ..... 600  
 3:5 ..... 960, 979, 1148  
 3:6 ..... 396  
 3:16 ..... 47, 434, 467,  
 ..... 708, 891  
 3:18 ..... 1006  
 4:24 ..... 437  
 4:25 ..... 597

5:22 ..... 563  
 5:23 ..... 112, 477, 565  
 5:28,29 ..... 911  
 6:1-14 ..... 284  
 6:3-13 ..... 510  
 6:5,6 ..... 1216  
 6:40 ..... 1155  
 6:68 ..... 603  
 8:12 ..... 763  
 8:31 ..... 842  
 8:34 ..... 629  
 8:44 ..... 538  
 8:46 ..... 127  
 8:47 ..... 185  
 10:16 ..... 824, 881  
 10:25-27 ..... 457  
 10:27 ..... 882  
 10:27,28 ..... 622, 936  
 10:35 ..... 20, 35  
 11:25,26 ..... 648  
 11:35 ..... 575  
 11:38-44 ..... 559  
 11:39 ..... 908  
 12:48 ..... 696  
 13:2 ..... 1220  
 14:2,3 ..... 683  
 14:15 ..... 787  
 14:19 ..... 677  
 14:26 ..... 720  
 15:5 ..... 782, 796,  
 ..... 1068, 1071  
 15:13 ..... 255  
 15:16 ..... 717  
 15:19 ..... 1175  
 15:26 ..... 80, 455  
 16:13 ..... 721  
 16:23 ..... 166, 1099,  
 ..... 1106, 1250

16:33 ..... 1176  
 17:3 ..... 1, 463, 767  
 17:6 ..... 133  
 17:8 ..... 201  
 17:17 ..... 19, 1129  
 17:26 ..... 172  
 18:36,37 ..... 616, 1142  
 18:37 ..... 1146  
 19:11 ..... 208  
 19:17-37 ..... 658  
 19:25-27 ..... 242  
 19:28 ..... 576  
 19:38-42 ..... 659  
 20 & 21 ..... 669  
 20:22,23 ..... 998, 1024  
 20:23 ..... 1004, 1007  
 20:29 ..... 470  
 20:31 ..... 10, 55, 464  
 21:15 ..... 857  
 21:17 ..... 445, 552

**Acts** 1:4-11 ..... 670  
 1:9 ..... 682  
 1:9-11 ..... 680  
 1:8 ..... 605  
 1:14 ..... 851  
 2 ..... 736  
 2:14-41 ..... 1016  
 2:32 ..... 673  
 2:38 ..... 883, 966  
 2:38,39 ..... 954  
 2:39 ..... 958  
 2:42 ..... 199, 839, 850  
 2:46,47 ..... 840  
 2:47 ..... 809  
 3:19 ..... 1008  
 4:12 ..... 403, 596

4:32 .....	841
5:1-11 .....	160
5:3,4 .....	724
5:14 .....	811
5:29 .....	239
7:51 .....	758
8:4 .....	864
8:26-38 .....	737
8:26-40 .....	955
8:36 .....	948
9:1-22 .....	741
10:38 .....	598
11:21 .....	744
11:21,26 .....	822
12:5-11 .....	520
13:1 .....	837
13:4-12 .....	153
14:17 .....	6, 514, 1188
14:22 .....	523, 1238
14:23 .....	838
15:41 .....	835
16:5 .....	835
16:25-33 .....	956
16:28 .....	263
16:30,31 .....	707
17:10-12 .....	23
17:10,11 .....	180
17:25 .....	24
17:26,30 .....	1193
17:31 .....	690
20:21 .....	990
20:27,28 .....	863
20:28 .....	207, 620, 1012
22:16 .....	943, 965
24:15 .....	912
26:18 .....	710

**Romans 1:4** .... 564 , 674

1:16 .....	46, 436
1:18 .....	409
1:20 .....	4
1:23 .....	115
1:25 .....	498
1:26,27 .....	317
2:5 .....	1003
2:14 .....	71
2:14,15 .....	56
2:15 .....	5, 57
3:12 .....	1033
3:19,20 .....	1039
3:20 .....	44, 50, 72, ..... 392, 433
3:23 .....	432, 627
3:23,24 .....	51, 895
3:28 .....	792, 901
4:16 .....	903
4:17 .....	481
4:20,21 .....	471
4:25 .....	641, 898
5:1 .....	768
5:5 .....	719
5:12 .....	397, 533
5:12-21 .....	626
5:18 .....	897
5:19 .....	128, 402
6:1-23 .....	776
6:3 .....	967
6:4 .....	994
6:4-6 .....	980
6:6 .....	1178
6:18 .....	645
6:20,22 .....	699
6:22,23 .....	1070
6:23 .....	45, 410, 1032
7:2,3 .....	294

7:7 .....	43, 73
7:7,8 .....	379
7:18 .....	395, 803, ..... 982, 1169
8:3,4 .....	52
8:7 .....	712
8:7,8 .....	421, 1170
8:15,16 .....	1120
8:16 .....	770
8:18-23 .....	1232
8:28 .....	521, 1240
8:28-30 .....	934
8:29 .....	940
8:31-39 .....	1226
8:32 .....	526
8:33 .....	889
8:34 .....	614
8:38,39 .....	623, 1252
9:5 .....	546
9:16 .....	762, 795
10:13 .....	137, 1125
10:17 .....	465, 739, 833, ..... 941, 1077, 1145
11:5 .....	937
11:27 .....	1067
12:1 .....	705, 1073
12:1,2 .....	78
12:2 .....	789, 801, 1157
12:14 .....	145
12:19,21 .....	274
12:20 .....	280
13:1 .....	204
13:1,4 .....	209
13:2 .....	223
13:3,4 .....	218
13:4 .....	238, 259
13:6,7 .....	339
13:7 .....	232



13:8..... 233  
 13:8-10..... 786  
 13:10..... 67  
 14:17 .... 618, 1141, 1149  
 15:4..... 54  
 16:17 ..... 158, 873, 1087  
 16:17,18..... 877

**1 Corinthians**

1:2 ..... 734, 810,  
 ..... 818  
 1:9..... 742  
 1:10..... 844, 1085  
 2:9..... 7  
 2:10..... 727  
 2:13..... 15, 18  
 2:14..... 713  
 3:11..... 821  
 3:16..... 725  
 4:1..... 1011  
 5:4,5..... 1020, 1021  
 6:9,10..... 316  
 6:11..... 733, 899  
 6:19,20..... 698  
 6:20..... 530  
 7:2..... 300  
 7:2-5..... 298  
 7:15..... 315  
 8:4..... 84  
 8:7 ..... 58  
 10:12,13 ..... 1227  
 10:13 ..... 808  
 10:16 ..... 1052, 1058  
 10:17 ..... 1086  
 10:21 ..... 1053  
 10:31 ..... 529  
 11:20 ..... 1054  
 11:23-25 ..... 1074, 1064

11:23-29 ..... 738  
 11:24 ..... 174  
 11:24,25 ..... 1082  
 11:25,26 ..... 1060  
 11:26 ..... 1083  
 11:27,29 ..... 1079, 1081  
 11:28 ..... 1080, 1084  
 12:1-31 ..... 766  
 12:3 ..... 7, 14, 718,  
 ..... 761, 900, 1147  
 12:12-27 ..... 500  
 12:13 ..... 825, 952  
 13:5-7 ..... 371  
 14:34 ..... 1014  
 14:40 ..... 964  
 15 ..... 671  
 15:1-58 ..... 921  
 15:4 ..... 672  
 15:17 ..... 676  
 15:33 ..... 1168  
 15:42,44 ..... 920  
 15:54-57 ..... 647  
 16:2 ..... 335

**2 Corinthians 1:3 ... 458**

2:7,8 ..... 1022  
 3:3 ..... 1134  
 4:4,5 ..... 764  
 4:8 ..... 1233  
 4:17 ..... 1241  
 5:1 ..... 926  
 5:14 ..... 96  
 5:15 ..... 701, 995  
 5:17 ..... 993  
 5:19 ..... 637, 886, 890  
 5:19,21 ..... 894  
 5:21 ..... 640

6:2 ..... 249  
 6:14,15 ..... 474  
 6:14-18 ..... 775, 874  
 7:1 ..... 876  
 7:10 ..... 989  
 8:9 ..... 352, 653, 660  
 9:7 ..... 334  
 11:3 ..... 800, 1164  
 13:11 ..... 845  
 13:14 ..... 86, 456, 723

**Galatians 1:4 ..... 1174**

2:4 ..... 869  
 2:16 ..... 902  
 2:20 ..... 784  
 3:1 ..... 868  
 3:10 ..... 41, 411  
 3:13 ..... 401, 643  
 3:24 ..... 74  
 3:26 ..... 460, 1119  
 3:26,27 ..... 951, 971  
 3:28 ..... 827  
 4:4,5 ..... 584, 588  
 5:13 ..... 386  
 5:17 ..... 804, 983, 1171  
 5:19,21 ..... 261, 270  
 5:19-21 ..... 981  
 5:22,23 ..... 996  
 6:1 ..... 1019  
 6:6 ..... 333  
 6:14 ..... 1177

**Ephesians 1:4-6..... 935**

1:4-7 ..... 939  
 1:5,6 ..... 938  
 1:7 ..... 624 , 1062  
 1:13,14 ..... 905

1:20-22	684
1:22,23	817
2:1	418, 628, 753
2:1,3	711
2:8,9	715, 759, 791
2:10	777, 783
2:12	8
2:19,20	823
3:12	904
4:4-6	826
4:11	1013
4:15	368
4:22	986
4:22-24	388
4:23,24	992
4:24	493, 532, 542
4:25	359
4:28	340
4:32	282, 1213
5:2	612
5:3,5	306
5:3-5	318
5:8	765
5:20	171
5:22-28	305
5:23,25	812
5:25,26	950, 976
5:25-27	389, 820
6:1	202, 206
6:2,3	214
6:4	213, 215
6:5	211
6:5,7,8	219
6:9	347
6:10-17	1225

<b>Philippians</b> 1:23	1245
2:4	387
2:5-8	652
2:8	244
2:9-11	662
2:13	1247
2:13	760, 794
3:19	122
3:21	918
4:4	773
4:6	262, 1109
4:7	769
4:13	1072

<b>Colossians</b> 1:16	483
2:9	585
2:13	644, 754
2:15	665
2:16,17	178
3:1,2	932
3:9	358, 985
3:10	494, 991
3:15,16	1143
3:16	182, 849
3:17	706, 785
3:22	205
3:22,23	348

<b>1 Thessalonians</b>	
2:13	11, 183, 466
4:3	313, 778, 1156
4:7	779
4:13-18	922
4:17	925
4:18	853
5:11	193, 846, 854
5:12,13	231

5:17	164
<b>2 Thessalonians</b>	
1:11,12	1135
2:1-12	687
2:13	735
3:3	1224
3:10	330
3:10-12	1198
<b>1 Timothy</b> 1:9,10	70
2:1	1111
2:3,4	756
2:4	1153
2:5	567, 1096
3:16	587
4:8	1069
5:4	228
5:8	336
6:6,8	384
6:6-8	345
6:8	1199
6:9,10	344
6:10	378

<b>2 Timothy</b> 1:5	216
1:9	743
1:9,10	541
1:10	646
1:12	472, 906, 1251
2:5	567
2:13	450
2:17,18	878
2:19	830, 880
2:22	321
3:15	9, 25, 740
	858, 942
3:16	16, 32

4:2 237, 865, 1132, 1152  
 4:18..... 621, 1244

**Titus** 2:13..... 774  
 2:14..129, 625, 700, 780,  
 1061  
 3:5.....731, 752, 978

**Philemon** ..... 385

**Hebrews** 1:1,2 ..... 14  
 1:3..... 562  
 1:14..... 484  
 2:14..568, 589, 651, 968  
 2:17 ..... 590  
 3:4..... 3  
 4:2..... 191, 1078  
 4:9..... 929  
 4:12..... 30  
 4:15..... 1229  
 4:16..... 1089, 1122  
 6:16..... 147  
 7:26..... 322  
 7:26,27 ..... 594, 611  
 9:6-10:18..... 609  
 9:14..... 728  
 10:24,25..... 848  
 10:25 ..... 186, 194  
 11:1 ..... 469  
 11:3 ..... 482, 496  
 11:6 ..... 781, 793, 1103  
 12:6 ..... 235, 1239  
 12:11 ..... 236  
 12:22,23 ..... 815  
 13:4 ..... 290, 310  
 13:5 ..... 383

13:7 ..... 203  
 13:8 ..... 551  
 13:17 ..... 217  
 13:20 ..... 1183

**James** 1:6..... 772, 1108  
 1:13-15..... 1221  
 1:14,15 ..... 380  
 1:17 ..... 1118, 1184  
 1:21 ..... 184  
 1:22-24..... 190  
 3:10 ..... 144  
 4:7 ..... 1172  
 4:11 ..... 364  
 4:17 ..... 399  
 5:4 ..... 342  
 5:16 .... 1029, 1037, 1100

**1 Peter** 1:3 ..... 749  
 1:5 ..... 806, 1181  
 1:18,19 ..... 632  
 1:23 ..... 12, 750, 977  
 2:9 ..... 167, 819, 1000  
 2:10 ..... 814  
 2:22,23 ..... 287  
 2:22-24..... 376  
 2:24 ..... 702  
 2:25 ..... 746  
 3:1-7..... 304  
 3:12 ..... 1104  
 3:15 ..... 861  
 3:18 ..... 591  
 3:19 ..... 664  
 3:21 ..... 970  
 4:1,2..... 390  
 4:14 ..... 732

5:7 ..... 508, 1197  
 5:8 ..... 799, 1165  
 5:10 ..... 805, 1182, 1243

**2 Peter** 1:16..... 28  
 1:21 ..... 13, 17  
 2:1 ..... 871, 879  
 2:1,2 ..... 1138  
 2:4 ..... 537  
 3:5 ..... 499  
 3:9 ..... 755, 1154  
 3:1-13..... 910  
 3:10 ..... 692  
 3:14,15 ..... 933  
 3:16..... 29

**1 John** 1:3..... 843  
 1:7 ... 192, 323, 631, 642  
 1:8 ..... 1002  
 1:9 ..... 1009, 1041  
 2:1,2 ..... 613  
 2:2 ..... 638, 892  
 2:15 ..... 124, 802  
 2:15,16 ..... 1166  
 2:23 ..... 113  
 3:2 ..... 930  
 3:4 ..... 391, 398,  
 3:8 ..... 535, 540, 619,  
 ..... 650, 1173  
 3:15 ..... 275  
 3:16 ..... 254  
 3:17 ..... 337  
 3:23 ..... 788  
 4:1 ..... 872  
 4:8 ..... 452  
 4:10,11 ..... 286

4:10 .....	630
4:19 .....	65
4:20 .....	281
5:14 .....	1115, 1249
5:19 .....	1167, 1235
5:20 .....	545
5:21 .....	109

<b>2 John 9</b> .....	114, 476
-----------------------	----------

<b>Revelation 1:7</b> .....	913
2 & 3 .....	836
5:12,13 .....	566
7:10-12 .....	1248
12:9 .....	536, 798,
.....	1163, 1223
21 & 22 .....	927
21:2 .....	816
21:3,4 .....	928
21:4 .....	1246
22:18,19 .....	26